

24745

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
25 May 2001 (25.05.2001)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 01/36604 A2**

(51) International Patent Classification\*: C12N 9/00 ONG, Edgar, O. [CA/US]; 8328 Regents Road #3C, San Diego, CA 92122 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/31803

(22) International Filing Date:  
17 November 2000 (17.11.2000)

(74) Agents: SEIDMAN, Stephanie, L. et al.; Heller Ehrman White & McAuliffe LLP, 4250 Executive Square, Suite 700, La Jolla, CA 92037 (US).

(25) Filing Language: English

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, H, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(26) Publication Language: English

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, H, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CI, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(30) Priority Data:

60/166,391 18 November 1999 (18.11.1999) US  
60/234,840 22 September 2000 (22.09.2000) US

Published:

— Without international search report and to be republished upon receipt of that report.

(63) Related by continuation (CON) or continuation-in-part (CIP) to earlier applications:

US 60/166,391 (CIP)  
Filed on 18 November 1999 (18.11.1999)  
US 60/234,840 (CIP)  
Filed on 22 September 2000 (22.09.2000)

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): CORVAS INTERNATIONAL, INC. [US/US]; 3030 Science Park Road, San Diego, CA 92121 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): MADISON, Edwin, L. [US/US]; 501 Stratford Court, Del Mar, CA 92014 (US).

WO 01/36604 A2

(54) Title: NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING ENDOTHELIASES, ENDOTHELIASES AND USES THEREOF

(57) Abstract: Provided herein endotheliaases and portions, particularly, the protease domains, and nucleic acids that encode the endotheliaases. The endotheliaases are transmembrane proteases expressed in endothelial cells. The nucleic acids and encoded proteins and protease domain portions thereof are used in a variety of prognostic, diagnostic, therapeutic and screening methods, including methods for screening for compounds that modulate angiogenesis.

-1-

**NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING ENDOTHELIASES, ENDOTHELIASES AND USES  
THEREOF**

**RELATED APPLICATIONS**

Benefit of priority to the following applications is claimed herein:

- 5 U.S. provisional application Serial No. 60/166,391 to Edwin L. Madison and Edgar O. Ong, filed November 18, 1999 entitled "NUCLEOTIDE AND PROTEIN SEQUENCES OF PROTEASE DOMAINS OF ENDOTHELIASE AND METHODS BASED THEREON"; and U.S. provisional application Serial No. 06/234,840 to Edwin L. Madison, Edgar O. Ong and Jiunn-Chern Yeh, filed September 22,
- 10 2000, entitled "NUCLEIC ACID MOLECULES ENCODING TRANSMEMBRANE SERINE PROTEASES, THE ENCODED PROTEINS AND METHODS BASED THEREON."

This application is also related to U.S. provisional application Serial No. 60/179,982, to Edwin L. Madison and Edgar O. Ong, filed February 3, 2000,

- 15 15 entitled "NUCLEOTIDE AND PROTEIN SEQUENCES OF A TRANSMEMBRANE SERINE PROTEASE AND METHODS BASED THEREOF"; U.S. provisional application Serial No. 60/183,542, to Edwin L. Madison and Edgar O. Ong, filed February 18, 2000, entitled "NUCLEOTIDE AND PROTEIN SEQUENCES OF A TRANSMEMBRANE SERINE PROTEASE AND METHODS BASED THEREOF"; U.S.
- 20 20 provisional application Serial No. 60/213,124, to Edwin L. Madison and Edgar O. Ong, filed June 22, 2000, entitled "NUCLEOTIDE AND PROTEIN SEQUENCES OF A TRANSMEMBRANE SERINE PROTEASE AND METHODS BASED THEREOF"; U.S. provisional application Serial No. 60/220,970, to Edwin L. Madison and Edgar O. Ong, filed July 26, 2000, entitled "NUCLEOTIDE AND
- 25 25 PROTEIN SEQUENCES OF A TRANSMEMBRANE SERINE PROTEASE AND METHODS BASED THEREOF."

Where permitted the above-noted provisional applications are incorporated by reference in their entirety.

-2-

#### FIELD OF INVENTION

Nucleic acid molecules that encode proteases and portions thereof, particularly protease domains, that are expressed endothelial cells and the use of the proteases and nucleic acids in methods of screening. Also provided are 5 prognostic, diagnostic and therapeutic methods using the proteases and domains thereof and the encoding nucleic acid molecules.

#### BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Angiogenesis is the generation of new blood vessels from parent microvessels. Controlled and uncontrolled angiogenesis proceed in a similar 10 manner. Endothelial cells and pericytes, surrounded by a basement membrane, form capillary blood vessels. Angiogenesis begins with the erosion of the basement membrane by enzymes released by endothelial cells and leukocytes. The endothelial cells, which line the lumen of blood vessels, then protrude through the basement membrane. Angiogenic stimulants induce the endothelial 15 cells to migrate through the eroded basement membrane. The migrating cells form a "sprout" off the parent blood vessel, where the endothelial cells undergo mitosis and proliferate. The endothelial sprouts merge with each other to form capillary loops, creating the new blood vessel.

#### Angiogenesis, modulators and associated diseases

20 Angiogenesis is highly regulated by a system of angiogenic stimulators and inhibitors. Known examples of angiogenesis stimulators include certain growth factors, cytokines, proteins, peptides, carbohydrates and lipids (Norby, *APMIS*, 105:417-437 (1997); Polverini, *Crit. Rev. Oral. Biol. Med.*, 6:230-247 (1995)). A variety of endogenous and exogenous angiogenesis inhibitors are 25 known in the art (Jackson et al., *FASEB*, 11:457-465 (1997); Norby, *APMIS*, 105:417-437 (1997); and O'Reilly, *Investigational New Drugs*, 15:5-13 (1997)).

In adult organisms, capillary endothelial cells divide relatively infrequently. When triggered by appropriate signals, e.g., in response to hormonal signals during menses or following the release of pro-angiogenic mediators sequestered 30 in the extracellular matrix, endothelial cells lining venules will systematically degrade their basement membrane and proximal extracellular matrix, migrate directionally, divide, and organize into new functioning capillaries, within a

-3-

matter of days (Polverini, *Crit. Rev. Oral. Biol. Med.*, 6:230-247 (1995)). This dramatic amplification of the microvasculature is nevertheless temporary, for as rapidly as the new capillaries are formed, they virtually disappear within a matter of days or weeks, returning the tissue microvasculature to its *status quo*. It is

- 5     this feature of transient growth and regression of capillaries that primarily distinguishes physiological angiogenesis from pathological one (Polverini, *Crit. Rev. Oral. Biol. Med.*, 6:230-247 (1995)). In contrast, pathological angiogenesis is caused by a shift in the net balance between stimulators and inhibitors of angiogenesis, e.g., due to the overproduction of normal or aberrant forms of
- 10    angiogenic mediators, or due to a relative deficiency in inhibitors of this process (Polverini, *Crit. Rev. Oral. Biol. Med.*, 6:230-247 (1995)).

Angiogenesis is essential for normal placental, embryonic, fetal and post-natal development and growth, but almost never occurs physiologically in adulthood except in very specific restricted situations. For example,

- 15    angiogenesis is normally observed in wound healing, fetal and embryonal development and formation of the corpus luteum, endometrium and placenta. Angiogenesis in the adult is often associated with disease states.

Persistent, unregulated angiogenesis occurs in a multiplicity of disease states, tumor metastasis and abnormal growth by endothelial cells and supports

- 20    the pathological damage seen in these conditions. The diverse pathological disease states in which unregulated angiogenesis is present have been grouped together as angiogenic dependent or angiogenic associated diseases.

The control of angiogenesis is altered in certain disease states and, in many cases, the pathological damage associated with the disease is related to

- 25    uncontrolled angiogenesis (see generally Norrby, *APMIS*, 105:417-437 (1997); and O'Reilly, *Investigational New Drugs*, 15:5-13 (1997)). Thus, angiogenesis is involved in the manifestation or progress of various diseases, for example, various inflammatory diseases, such as rheumatoid arthritis, psoriasis, diabetic retinopathies, certain ocular disorders, including recurrence of pterygia, scarring
- 30    excimer laser surgery and glaucoma filtering surgery, various disorders of the anterior eye, cardiovascular disorders, chronic inflammatory diseases, wound repair, circulatory disorders, crest syndromes, dermatological disorders (see,

-4-

e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 5,593,990, 5,629,327 and 5,712,291), and notably cancer, including solid neoplasms and vascular tumors. Several lines of direct evidence indicate that angiogenesis is essential for the growth and persistence of solid tumors and their metastases.

- 5        Thus, it is clear that angiogenesis plays a major role in the metastasis of cancer and in the pathology of a variety of other disorders. Repressing, eliminating or modulating this activity, should impact the etiology of these diseases and serve as a point of therapeutic intervention. In the disease state, prevention of angiogenesis could avert the damage caused by the invasion of the  
10      new microvascular system. Therapies directed at control of the angiogenic processes could lead to the abrogation or mitigation of these diseases.

Hence there is a need to develop therapeutics that target angiogenesis and modulate, particularly, inhibit aberrant or uncontrolled angiogenesis. Therefore it is an object herein to provide assays for identification of such agents. It is  
15      also an object herein to provide nucleic acids encoding the proteins and polypeptides and also to provide the proteins and polypeptides that are involved in the regulation of angiogenesis.

#### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

Provided herein are a class membrane proteases that are expressed on  
20      cells, particularly endothelial cells, and that participate in angiogenesis. Also provided herein are methods of modulating the activity of the proteases and screening for compounds that modulate the activity thereof. Such modulation includes inhibiting, antagonizing agonizing and otherwise altering the activity of the protease. Of particular interest is the extracellular domain of these proteases  
25      that includes the proteolytic portion of the protein.

In particular, proteases, especially protease domains thereof, of proteins designated herein as endotheliase proteins are provided. Also provided are herein are nucleic acids encoding the protease domains of the endotheliases and also the full-length endotheliases. In exemplary embodiments endotheliases,  
30      designated 1 and 2, particularly the protease domains thereof are provided. A Full-length endotheliase 2 variants are also provided. Nucleic acid molecules encoding the endotheliases are provided as are vectors containing the nucleic

-5-

- acids and cells containing the vectors. Preferred endotheliases are those that include the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID No. 2, 4, 6 or 22, and particularly the protease domain encoding portions (SEQ ID No. 2, amino acids 321-688 of SEQ ID No. 4, and amino acids 321-520 of SEQ ID No. 6; amino acid 320 of each SEQ ID is optionally included as part of the protease domain). Also provided are nucleic acid molecules that hybridize, preferably along their full length, to a nucleic acid molecule having the nucleotide sequence of nucleotides set forth in SEQ. ID NO. 1, 3, 5 or 22 or portions thereof, preferably, the protease domain encoding portions or a sufficient portion thereof such that the 10 encoded protein exhibits protease activity.

In preferred embodiments, the isolated nucleic acid molecule hybridizes to the nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID No. 1, 3 or 5 under high stringency conditions. In another preferred embodiment, the isolated nucleic acid molecule contains sequence of nucleotides set forth in 15 SEQ. ID No. 1, 3 or 5.

In one embodiment, the isolated nucleic acid molecule contains only the sequence of nucleotides set forth in SEQ. ID No 1, 3, or 5 or portions thereof, including molecules contain 14, 16, 30, 100 or up to the full length sequence thereof. In another embodiment, an isolated nucleic acid molecule has a 20 nucleotide sequence complementary to the nucleotide sequence encoding the protease domain of the endotheliase is provided.

Vectors and plasmids containing the above-noted nucleic acid molecules are provided. Cells containing the plasmids or vectors are provided herein. More preferably, the cell is a bacterial cell, a yeast cell, a fungal cell, a plant cell, an 25 insect cell or an animal cell.

Cells that contain the nucleic acids, and preferably express the encoded endotheliases or portion thereof, preferably the protease domain thereof, are also provided. The cells and vector can be engineered to express the endotheliase on the surface; such cells preferably contain the full-length coding portion of an 30 endotheliase. In other embodiments, the cells and vectors are designed to secrete the encoding endotheliase or protease domain thereof, such as by including a sequence of nucleotides that directs secretion.

-6-

Methods for producing a protease domain of an endotheliase or an endotheliase by growing the above-described cells under conditions whereby the encoded protease domain of the endotheliase is expressed by the cell, and recovering the expressed protease domain protein, are provided herein.

5       Also provided herein are antibodies that specifically bind, particularly immunospecifically, to the endotheliases, preferably to the protease domains of the endotheliases.

Compositions, including pharmaceutical containing the endotheliase or protease domains of the endotheliase are provided. Combinations, kits

10      containing the combinations and articles of manufacture containing the compositions or proteins are also provided. In one embodiment, combinations are provided herein that include an inhibitor of an endotheliase or an inhibitor of the protease activity thereof and another anti-angiogenic treatment or agent.

15      The endotheliase inhibitor and the anti-angiogenic agent can be formulated in a single pharmaceutical composition or each can be formulated in a separate pharmaceutical composition. Kits containing the combinations are provided.

Transgenic non-human animals bearing inactivated genes encoding the endotheliases and bearing the genes encoding an endotheliase, preferably under control of a non-native promotor control are provided.

20      Conjugates of the endotheliases or protease domain portion thereof, such as conjugates of an endotheliase with a targeting agent to direct the endotheliase to a particular cells or tissues and conjugates with a linker or detection moiety for linkage to a solid support and detection, respectively, are provided. Methods using the conjugates are also provided. For example, the

25      endotheliases or protease domain thereof may be linked to a cell specific targeting agent, particularly an agent, such as a growth factor or monoclonal antibody that binds to a cell surface protein that results in internalization of the conjugate or endotheliase portion thereof. These conjugates are administered with, before or following administration of a prodrug, such as a daunomycin or

30      other cytotoxic agent. The prodrug is designed to be activated by the endotheliase. Upon binding to the targeted cells and internalization, the endotheliase interacts with activates the prodrug, thereby providing a means for

target specific activation of a drug and selective killing or inhibition of targeted cells. Also provided herein are modulators of the activity of the endotheliase or protease domain.

Further provided herein are prognostic, diagnostic and therapeutic

- 5 screening methods using the protease domains of the endotheliase and the nucleic acids encoding such domains. In particular, the prognostic, diagnostic and therapeutic screening methods are used for preventing or treating, or for finding agents useful in preventing or treating, diseases or disorders associated with aberrant level of angiogenesis.
- 10 Methods for screening for compounds that modulate the activity of the endotheliase are provided. *In vitro* assays in which the compounds are identified by contacting them with the endotheliase or protease domain thereof and a substrate for the endotheliase are provided. A change in the amount of substrate cleaved in the presence of the compounds compared to the absence of
- 15 the compound indicates that the compound modulates the activity of the endotheliase. Such compounds are selected for further analyses or for use to inhibit the activity of the endotheliase, such as inhibitors or agonists. The *in vitro* assays can be performed in liquid phase or on solid phase substrates by linking the endotheliase or protease domain thereof directly or via a linker to a
- 20 solid support. Cell-based screening assays are also provided. The compounds can also be identified by contacting the substrates with a cell that expresses the endotheliase or the extracellular domain or proteolytically active portion thereof.

In one embodiment, the method for identifying a modulator of an endotheliase includes: a) contacting an endotheliase with a substrate of the endotheliase, and detecting the proteolysis of the substrate, whereby the activity of the endotheliase is assessed; b) contacting the endotheliase with a substrate of the endotheliase in the presence of a test substance, and detecting the proteolysis of the substrate, whereby the activity of the endotheliase is assessed; and c) comparing the activity of the endotheliase assessed in steps a)

- 30 and b), whereby a difference in activity measured in step a) from the activity measured in step b) indicates that the test substance modulates the activity of

-8-

the endotheliase. In a preferred embodiment, a plurality of the test substances are screened for simultaneously in the above screening method.

- In another embodiment, the endotheliase to be screened against is isolated from a target cell and the test substance is a therapeutic compound. A difference of the endotheliase activity measured in the presence and in the absence of the test substance indicates that the target cell responds to the therapeutic compound. For example, detection of protease domains in the blood or other body fluid can be indicative of cancer, particularly metastatic cancer.
- 5

- Method for diagnosing diseases or disorders by detecting levels of
- 10 endotheliases or protease domains thereof or encoding nucleic acids in body tissues and body fluids are provided. The methods require testing a body fluid or tissue for the presence or level of an endotheliase or protease domain thereof and assessing whether the level is higher or lower than in non-disease state. For example, methods of diagnosing a disease or disorder by detecting an
- 15 aberrant level of an endotheliase in a subject. The methods include the steps of measuring the level of the DNA, RNA, protein or functional activity of an endothelial endotheliase, in a sample derived from a subject, where an increase or decrease in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein or functional activity of the endotheliase, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein or functional activity
- 20 found in an analogous sample not having the disease or disorder indicates the presence of the disease or disorder in the subject.

- In another embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis in a subject is provided. In this
- 25 method, the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase in a sample derived from the subject, where an increase in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity in the sample, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis, indicates the presence of
- 30 the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis.

In another embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated

- with deficient angiogenesis in a subject is provided herein. This method includes measuring the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase in a sample derived from the subject, where a decrease in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity in the sample, relative to the 5 level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the deficient angiogenesis, indicates the presence of the deficient angiogenesis.

Also provided are methods for treatment or prophylaxis of a disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis in a 10 mammal by administering to a mammal an effective amount of an inhibitor of an endotheliase, whereby the disease or disorder is treated or prevented are provided. The endotheliase inhibitor used in the treatment or prevention is preferably administered with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient and the mammal treated is a human. Preferred inhibitors herein are antibodies 15 that specifically bind to the endotheliase or to the protease domain thereof, and inhibitors of translation of the encoding mRNA and inhibitors of transcription of the mRNA, including antisense nucleic acid molecules.

In another embodiment, the treatment or prevention method also includes administering an additional anti-angiogenic treatment(s) or agent(s) in 20 combination therewith. The further anti-angiogenic agent or treatment may be administered simultaneously, subsequently or prior to administration of the endotheliase inhibitor, which can be, for example, an antibody or a fragment or derivative thereof containing the binding region thereof against the endotheliase, an antisense nucleic acid encoding the endotheliase, or a nucleic acid containing 25 at least a portion of a gene encoding the endotheliase into which a heterologous nucleotide sequence has been inserted such that the heterologous sequence inactivates the biological activity of at least a portion of the gene encoding the endotheliase, in which the portion of the gene encoding the endotheliase flanks the heterologous sequence so as to promote homologous recombination with a 30 genomic gene encoding the endotheliase.

The undesired angiogenesis to be treated or prevented is associated with disorders and diseases that include, but are not limited to, solid neoplasms,

-10-

- vascular malformations, and cardiovascular disorders, chronic inflammatory diseases, aberrant wound repairs, such as observed following glaucoma filtering surgeries and excimer laser eye surgery, circulatory disorders, crest syndromes, dermatological disorders and ocular disorders. The vascular malformations and
- 5 cardiovascular disorders to be treated or prevented include angiofibroma, angiolioma, atherosclerosis, restenosis/reperfusion injury, arteriovenous malformations, hemangiomatosis and vascular adhesions, dyschondroplasia with vascular hamartomas (Fafucci's syndrome), hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome), or Von Hippel Lindau syndrome; the
- 10 chronic inflammatory diseases to be treated or prevented are diabetes mellitus, hemophiliac joints, inflammatory bowel disease, nonhealing fractures, periodontitis (rapidly progressing and juvenile), psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, venous stasis ulcers, granulations-burns, hypertrophic scars, liver cirrhosis, osteoradionecrosis, postoperative adhesions, pyogenic granuloma, or systemic
- 15 sclerosis; the circulatory disorder to be treated or prevented is Raynaud's phenomenon; the crest syndromes to be treated or prevented are calcinosis, esophageal, dyomotility, sclerodactyly and teangiectasia; the dermatological disorders to be treated or prevented are systemic vasculitis, scleroderma, pyoderma gangrenosum, vasculopathy, venous, arterial ulcers, Sturge-Weber
- 20 syndrome, Port-wine stains, blue rubber bleb nevus syndrome, Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber syndrome or Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome; and the ocular disorders to be treated or prevented are blindness caused by ocular neovascular disease, corneal graft neovascularization, macular degeneration in the eye, neovascular glaucoma, trachoma, diabetic retinopathy, myopic degeneration,
- 25 retinopathy of prematurity, retrobulbar fibroplasia, or corneal neovascularization.
- In another embodiment, a method for treating or preventing a disease or disorder associated with deficient angiogenesis in a mammal is provided herein. The method includes administering to a mammal an effective amount of an endotheliase protein, a nucleic acid encoding the protein, and a nucleic acid
- 30 encoding a derivative or analog of the protein that is active in promoting angiogenesis, whereby the disease or disorder is treated or prevented. In a preferred embodiment, the endotheliase protein, a derivative or analog of the

-11-

protein, a nucleic acid encoding the protein, and a nucleic acid encoding a derivative or analog of the protein is administered with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient. The mammal to be treated, preferably, is a human. In another embodiment, the treatment or prevention method further

5 includes administering an pro-angiogenic treatment or agent.

Also provided are methods for treating or preventing a disease or disorder associated with deficient or defective angiogenesis in a mammal, such as a human, by administering to a mammal an effective amount of an endotheliase or a catalytically or functionally active portion, such as a protease domain, thereof,

10 whereby the disease or disorder is treated or prevented or the symptoms are ameliorated. The method can further include, administering an pro-angiogenic treatment or agent that promotes angiogenesis simultaneously, prior to or after administration of the endotheliase or portion thereof.

Among the endotheliases provided herein are those whose activity is upregulated during angiogenesis. Such endotheliases can serve targets for activation of prodrugs that are designed to be selectively activated by these endotheliases. Hence therapeutic methods for treating disorders that involve endothelial cells that express such upregulated endotheliases are provided.

Also provided herein are transgenic non-human animals. In these animals, an endogenous gene of an endotheliase is deleted or inactivated by homologous recombination or insertional mutagenesis of the animal or an ancestor thereof.

Also provided herein are articles of manufacture that contain: a) packaging material; b) an endotheliase or protease domain thereof, or a

25 composition containing the endotheliase or protease domain thereof; and c) a label indicating that the article is for use in identifying a modulator of the activity of an endotheliase in a sample or for diagnostic, therapeutic or drug screening use.

#### BRIEF DESCRIPTION OF DRAWING

30 Figure 1 depicts the domain organization of the endotheliase 2 splice variants. Each variant includes three repetitive sequences composed of

-12-

ASPAGTPPGRASP (SEQ ID NO. 14) a sequence motif for N-myristoylation modification just before the transmembrane domain.

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

**A. DEFINITIONS**

- 5 Unless defined otherwise, all technical and scientific terms used herein have the same meaning as is commonly understood by one of ordinary skill in the art to which this invention belongs. All patents, applications, published applications and other publications and sequences from GenBank and other data bases referred to herein are incorporated by reference in their entirety.
- 10 As used herein, the abbreviations for any protective groups, amino acids and other compounds, are, unless indicated otherwise, in accord with their common usage, recognized abbreviations, or the IUPAC-IUB Commission on Biochemical Nomenclature (see, (1972) Biochem. 11:942-944).
- As used herein, angiogenesis is intended to broadly encompass the
- 15 totality of processes directly or indirectly involved in the establishment and maintenance of new vasculature (neovascularization), including, but not limited to, neovascularization associated with tumors.
- As used herein, anti-angiogenic treatment or agent refers to any therapeutic regimen and compound, when used alone or in combination with
- 20 other treatment or compounds, that can alleviate, reduce, ameliorate, prevent, or place or maintain in a state of remission of clinical symptoms or diagnostic markers associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis. Thus, for purposes herein an anti-angiogenic agent refers to an agent that inhibits the establishment or maintenance of vasculature. Such agents include, but are not
- 25 limited to, anti-tumor agents, and agents for treatments of other disorders associated with undesirable angiogenesis, such as diabetic retinopathies, restenosis, hyperproliferative disorders and others.
- As used herein, pro-angiogenic agents are agents that promote the establishment or maintenance of the vasculature. Such agents include agents
- 30 for treating cardiovascular disorders, including heart attacks and strokes.

-13-

As used herein, undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis refers to pathological angiogenesis wherein the influence of angiogenesis stimulators outweighs the influence of angiogenesis inhibitors.

- As used herein, deficient angiogenesis refers to pathological angiogenesis
- 5 associated with disorders where there is a defect in normal angiogenesis resulting in aberrant angiogenesis or an absence or substantial reduction in angiogenesis.

As used herein, endotheliase refers to a mammalian protein, including humans, that has a transmembrane domain and is expressed on the surface of

10 endothelial cells and includes a protease domain, particularly an extracellular protease domain, and is preferably a serine protease. Thus, reference, for example, to endotheliase encompasses all proteins encoded by the endotheliase gene family, or an equivalent molecule obtained from any other source or that has been prepared synthetically or that exhibits the same activity. The

15 endotheliase gene family are transmembrane proteases expressed in endothelial cells. These proteases include serine proteases. When more particularity is need, it refers to proteins that have these features and also include a protease domain that exhibits sequence homology to the endotheliases 1 and 2 exemplified herein. Endotheliase 1 and 2, for example exhibit about 40% or

20 45% identity. Sequence homology means sequence identity along its length when aligned to maximize identity of at least about 25%, 40%, 60%, 80%, 90% or greater number of residues. Sequence homology also is assessed by determining whether the encoding sequences of nucleic acids hybridize under conditions of at least moderate, or for more closely related proteins, high

25 stringency to the nucleic acid molecules provided herein or to those that encode the same proteins but differ in sequence by virtue of the degeneracy of the genetic code. In addition, endotheliases encompass endotheliases with conservative amino acid substitutions, such as those set forth in Table 1, that do not substantially alter its proteolytic activity. Suitable conservative substitutions

30 of amino acids are known to those of skill in this art and may be made generally without altering the biological activity of the resulting molecule. Those of skill in this art recognize that, in general, single amino acid substitutions in non-essential

-14-

regions of a polypeptide do not substantially alter biological activity (see, e.g., Watson *et al.* *Molecular Biology of the Gene*, 4th Edition, 1987, The Bejacmin/Cummings Pub. co., p.224). Also included within the definition, is the catalytically active fragment of an endotheliase.

- 5 As used herein, the protease domain of an endotheliase refers to the polypeptide portion of the endotheliase that is the extracellular portion that exhibits protease activity. The protease domain is a polypeptide that includes at least the minimum number of amino acids, generally more than 50 or 100, required for protease activity. Protease activity may be assessed empirically,
- 10 such as by testing the polypeptide for its ability to act as a protease. Assays, such as in the assays described in the EXAMPLES, except employing a known substrate in place of the test compounds as described in the Examples may be used. Furthermore, since proteases, particularly serine proteases, have characteristic structures and sequences or motifs, the protease domain may be
- 15 readily identified by such structure and sequence or motif.

- As used herein, the portion of protease domain of endotheliase refers to the protease domain of endotheliase that is located within or is the extracellular domain of an endotheliase and exhibits serine proteolytic activity. Hence it is at least the minimal portion of the extracellular domain that exhibits proteolytic
- 20 activity as assessed by standard assays. An exemplary protease domain of an endotheliase is set forth in SEQ ID No. 2 and as amino acids 321-688 and 321-562 of SEQ ID Nos. 4 and 6. Smaller portions thereof that retain protease activity are contemplated. The protease domains vary in size and constitution, including insertions and deletions in surface loops. Such domains exhibit
- 25 conserved structure, including at least one structural feature, such as the active site triad, primary specificity pocket, oxyanion hole and/or other features of serine protease domains of proteases. Thus, for purposes herein, the protease domain is a portion of an endotheliase, as defined herein, but is homologous in terms of structural features and retention of sequence of similarity or homology
- 30 the protease domain of chymotrypsin or trypsin.

As used herein, homologous means about greater than about 25% sequence identity. By sequence identity, the number of conserved amino acids

-15-

as determined by standard alignment algorithms programs, and used with default gap penalties established by each supplier. Also homology may be assessed by conserved nucleic acid sequence, which includes anything that hybridizes under at least low stringency conditions and encodes the domain. Similarly nucleic acid sequence alignment programs are commercially available (DNAStar "MegAlign" program (Madison, WI) and the University of Wisconsin Genetics Computer Group (UWG) "Gap" program (Madison WI)). Substantially homologous nucleic acid molecules would hybridize typically at moderate stringency or at high stringency all along the length of the nucleic acid of interest. Also contemplated are nucleic acid molecules that contain degenerate codons in place of codons in the hybridizing nucleic acid molecule.

As used herein, recitation that a polypeptide consists essentially of the protease domain means that the only endotheliase portion of the polypeptide is a protease domain or a catalytically active portion thereof. The polypeptide may optionally include additional non-endotheliase-derived sequences of amino acids.

As used herein, pro-angiogenic treatment or agent refers to any therapeutic regimen and compound, when used alone or in combination with other treatment or compounds, that can alleviate, reduce, ameliorate, prevent, or place or maintain in a state of remission of clinical symptoms or diagnostic markers associated with deficient angiogenesis.

As used herein, domain refers to a portion of a molecule, e.g., proteins or nucleic acids, that is structurally and/or functionally distinct from other portions of the molecule.

As used herein, protease refers to an enzyme catalyzing hydrolysis of proteins or peptides.

As used herein, serine protease refers to a diverse family of proteases wherein a serine residue is involved in the hydrolysis of proteins or peptides. The serine residue can be part of the catalytic triad mechanism, which includes a serine, a histidine and an aspartic acid in the catalysis, or be part of the hydroxyl/ε-amine or hydroxyl/α-amine catalytic dyad mechanism, which involves a serine and a lysine in the catalysis. Examples of serine proteases include, but are not limited to, chymotrypsin, trypsin, plasmin, thrombin and elastase.

-16-

As used herein, catalytic activity refers to the activity of the endotheliase as a proteases. Function of the endotheliase refers to its function in endothelial cell biology, including promotion of angiogenesis or involvement in angiogenesis.

As used herein, nucleic acids include DNA, RNA and anlagen thereof,

- 5 including protein nucleic acids (PNA) and mixture thereof. Nucleic acids can be single or double stranded. When referring to probes or primers, single-stranded molecules are contemplated.

- As used herein, nucleic acid encoding a fragment or portion of an endotheliase refers to a nucleic acid encoding only the recited fragment or  
10 portion of endotheliase protein, and not the other contiguous portions of the endotheliase as a continuous sequence.

- As used herein, heterologous or foreign DNA and RNA are used interchangeably and refer to DNA or RNA that does not occur naturally as part of the genome in which it is present or which is found in a location or locations in  
15 the genome that differ from that in which it occurs in nature. Heterologous nucleic acid is generally not endogenous to the cell into which it is introduced, but has been obtained from another cell or prepared synthetically. Generally, although not necessarily, such nucleic acid encodes RNA and proteins that are not normally produced by the cell in which it is expressed. Any DNA or RNA  
20 that one of skill in the art would recognize or consider as heterologous or foreign to the cell in which it is expressed is herein encompassed by heterologous DNA. Heterologous DNA and RNA may also encode RNA or proteins that mediate or alter expression of endogenous DNA by affecting transcription, translation, or other regulatable biochemical processes.

- 25 As used herein, operative linkage of heterologous DNA to regulatory and effector sequences of nucleotides, such as promoters, enhancers, transcriptional and translational stop sites, and other signal sequences refers to the relationship between such DNA and such sequences of nucleotides. For example, operative linkage of heterologous DNA to a promoter refers to the physical relationship  
30 between the DNA and the promoter such that the transcription of such DNA is initiated from the promoter by an RNA polymerase that specifically recognizes, binds to and transcribes the DNA in reading frame.

-17-

As used herein, a sequence complementary to at least a portion of an RNA, with reference to antisense oligonucleotides, means a sequence having sufficient complementarity to be able to hybridize with the RNA, preferably under moderate or high stringency conditions, forming a stable duplex; in the case of 5 double-stranded endotheliase antisense nucleic acids, a single strand of the duplex DNA may thus be tested, or triplex formation may be assayed. The ability to hybridize depends on the degree of complementarity and the length of the antisense nucleic acid. Generally, the longer the hybridizing nucleic acid, the more base mismatches with a an endotheliase encoding RNA it can contain and 10 still form a stable duplex (or triplex, as the case may be). One skilled in the art can ascertain a tolerable degree of mismatch by use of standard procedures to determine the melting point of the hybridized complex.

For purposes herein, conservative amino acid substitutions may be made in any of endotheliases or protease domains thereof provided that the resulting 15 protein exhibits protease activity. Amino acid substitutions are preferably made in accordance with those set forth in TABLE 1 as follows:

TABLE 1

	Original residue	Conservative substitution
20	Ala (A)	Gly; Ser
	Arg (R)	Lys
	Asn (N)	Gln; His
	Cys (C)	Ser
	Gln (Q)	Asn
	Glu (E)	Asp
25	Gly (G)	Ala; Pro
	His (H)	Asn; Gln
	Ile (I)	Leu; Val
	Leu (L)	Ile; Val
	Lys (K)	Arg; Gln; Glu
	Met (M)	Leu; Tyr; Ile
30	Phe (F)	Met; Leu; Tyr
	Ser (S)	Thr
	Thr (T)	Ser
	Trp (W)	Tyr
	Tyr (Y)	Trp; Phe
	Val (V)	Ile; Leu

Other substitutions are also permissible and may be determined empirically or in accord with known conservative substitutions.

-18-

As used herein, the amino acids, which occur in the various amino acid sequences appearing herein, are identified according to their well-known, three-letter or one-letter abbreviations. The nucleotides, which occur in the various DNA fragments, are designated with the standard single-letter designations used 5 routinely in the art.

As used herein, a splice variant refers to a variant produced by differential processing of a primary transcript of genomic DNA that results in more than one type of mRNA.

As used herein, a probe or primer based on a nucleotide sequence 10 disclosed herein, includes at least 10, 14, preferably at least 16 or 30 or 100 contiguous sequence of nucleotides of SEQ ID Nos. 1, 3 or 5.

As used herein, amelioration of the symptoms of a particular disorder by administration of a particular pharmaceutical composition refers to any lessening, whether permanent or temporary, lasting or transient that can be attributed to or 15 associated with administration of the composition.

As used herein, antisense polynucleotides refer to synthetic sequences of nucleotide bases complementary to mRNA or the sense strand of double stranded DNA. Admixture of sense and antisense polynucleotides under appropriate conditions leads to the binding of the two molecules, or 20 hybridization. When these polynucleotides bind to (hybridize with) mRNA, inhibition of protein synthesis (translation) occurs. When these polynucleotides bind to double stranded DNA, inhibition of RNA synthesis (transcription) occurs. The resulting inhibition of translation and/or transcription leads to an inhibition of the synthesis of the protein encoded by the sense strand.

25 As used herein, an array refers to a collection of elements, such as antibodies, containing three or more members. An addressable array is one in which the members of the array are identifiable, typically by position on a solid phase support. Hence, in general the members of the array will be immobilized to discrete identifiable loci on the surface of a solid phase.

30 As used herein, antibody refers to an immunoglobulin, whether natural or partially or wholly synthetically produced, including any derivative thereof that retains the specific binding ability the antibody. Hence antibody includes any

-19-

protein having a binding domain that is homologous or substantially homologous to an immunoglobulin binding domain. Antibodies include members of any immunoglobulin claims, including IgG, IgM, IgA, IgD and IgE.

As used herein, antibody fragment refers to any derivative of an antibody  
5 that is less than full length, retaining at least a portion of the full-length  
antibody's specific binding ability. Examples of antibody fragments include, but  
are not limited to, Fab, Fab', F(ab)<sub>2</sub>, single-chain Fvs (scFV), FV, dsFV diabody  
and Fd fragments. The fragment can include multiple chains linked together,  
such as by disulfide bridges. An antibody fragment generally contains at least  
10 about 50 amino acids and typically at least 200 amino acids.

As used herein, an Fv antibody fragment is composed of one variable  
heavy domain (V<sub>H</sub>) and one variable light domain linked by noncovalent  
interactions.

As used herein, a dsFV refers to an Fv with an engineered intermolecular  
15 disulfide bond, which stabilizes the V<sub>H</sub>-V<sub>L</sub> pair.

As used herein, an F(ab)<sub>2</sub> fragment is an antibody fragment that results  
from digestion of an immunoglobulin with pepsin at pH 4.0-4.5; it may be  
recombinantly produced.

As used herein, Fab fragments is an antibody fragment that results from  
20 digestion of an immunoglobulin with papain; it may be recombinantly produced.

As used herein, scFVs refer to antibody fragments that contain a variable  
light chain (V<sub>L</sub>) and variable heavy chain (V<sub>H</sub>) covalently connected by a  
polypeptide linker in any order. The linker is of a length such that the two  
variable domains are bridged without substantial interference. Preferred linkers  
25 are (Gly-Ser)<sub>n</sub> residues with some Glu or Lys residues dispersed throughout to  
increase solubility.

As used herein, humanized antibodies refer to antibodies that are  
modified to include human sequences of amino acids so that administration to a  
human will not provoke an immune response. Methods for preparation of such  
30 antibodies are known. For example, the hybridoma that expresses the  
monoclonal antibody is altered by recombinant DNA techniques to express an  
antibody in which the amino acid composition of the non-variable regions is

-20-

based on human antibodies. Computer programs have been designed to identify such regions.

As used herein, diabodies are dimeric scFV; diabodies typically have shorter peptide linkers than scFVs, and they preferentially dimerize.

- 5        As used herein, humanized antibodies refer to antibodies that are modified to include human sequences of amino acids so that administration to a human will not provoke an immune response. Methods for preparation of such antibodies are known. For example, the hybridoma that expresses the monoclonal antibody is altered by recombinant DNA techniques to express an
- 10      antibody in which the amino acid composition of the non-variable regions is based on human antibodies. Computer programs have been designed to identify such regions.

As used herein, production by recombinant means by using recombinant DNA methods means the use of the well known methods of molecular biology for expressing proteins encoded by cloned DNA.

- 15      As used herein the term assessing is intended to include quantitative and qualitative determination in the sense of obtaining an absolute value for the activity of an endotheliase, or a domain thereof, present in the sample, and also of obtaining an index, ratio, percentage, visual or other
- 20      value indicative of the level of the activity. Assessment may be direct or indirect and the chemical species actually detected need not of course be the proteolysis product itself but may for example be a derivative thereof or some further substance.

As used herein, biological activity refers to the in vivo activities of a compound or physiological responses that result upon in vivo administration of a compound, composition or other mixture. Biological activity, thus, encompasses therapeutic effects and pharmaceutical activity of such compounds, compositions and mixtures. Biological activities may be observed in in vitro systems designed to test or use such activities. Thus, for purposes herein the

- 25      biological activity of a luciferase is its oxygenase activity whereby, upon oxidation of a substrate, light is produced.
- 30

-21-

As used herein, a combination refers to any association between two or among more items.

As used herein, a composition refers to a any mixture. It may be a solution, a suspension, liquid, powder, a paste, aqueous, non-aqueous or any  
5 combination thereof.

As used herein, a conjugate refers to the compounds provided herein that include one or more endotheliases, or domains thereof, and one or more targeting agents. These conjugates include those produced by recombinant means as fusion proteins, those produced by chemical means, such as by  
10 chemical coupling, through, for example, coupling to sulphydryl groups, and those produced by any other method whereby at least one endotheliase, or a domain thereof, is linked, directly or indirectly via linker(s) to a targeting agent.

As used herein, a targeting agent, is any moiety, such as a protein or effective portion thereof, that provides specific binding of the conjugate to a cell  
15 surface receptor, which preferably internalizes the conjugate or endotheliase portion thereof. A targeting agent may also be one that promotes or facilitates, for example, affinity isolation or purification of the conjugate; attachment of the conjugate to a surface;  
or detection of the conjugate or complexes containing the conjugate.

20 As used herein, an antibody conjugate refers to a conjugate in which the targeting agent is an antibody.

As used herein, humanized antibodies refer to antibodies that are modified to include human sequences of amino acids so that administration to a human will not provoke an immune response. Methods for preparation of such  
25 antibodies are known. For example, the hybridoma that expresses the monoclonal antibody is altered by recombinant DNA techniques to express an antibody in which the amino acid composition of the non-variable regions is based on human antibodies. Computer programs have been designed to identify such regions.

30 As used herein, derivative or analog of a molecule refers to a portion derived from or a modified version of the molecule.

-22-

As used herein, fluid refers to any composition that can flow. Fluids thus encompass compositions that are in the form of semi-solids, pastes, solutions, aqueous mixtures, gels, lotions, creams and other such compositions.

- As used herein, an effective amount of a compound for treating a
- 5 particular disease is an amount that is sufficient to ameliorate, or in some manner reduce the symptoms associated with the disease. Such amount may be administered as a single dosage or may be administered according to a regimen, whereby it is effective. The amount may cure the disease but, typically, is administered in order to ameliorate the symptoms of the disease.
  - 10 Repeated administration may be required to achieve the desired amelioration of symptoms.

As used herein equivalent, when referring to two sequences of nucleic acids means that the two sequences in question encode the same sequence of amino acids or equivalent proteins. When equivalent is used in referring to two

- 15 proteins or peptides, it means that the two proteins or peptides have substantially the same amino acid sequence with only conservative amino acid substitutions (see, e.g., Table 1, above) that do not substantially alter the activity or function of the protein or peptide. When equivalent refers to a property, the property does not need to be present to the same extent [e.g., two
- 20 peptides can exhibit different rates of the same type of enzymatic activity], but the activities are preferably substantially the same. Complementary, when referring to two nucleotide sequences, means that the two sequences of nucleotides are capable of hybridizing, preferably with less than 25%, more preferably with less than 15%, even more preferably with less than 5%, most
- 25 preferably with no mismatches between opposed nucleotides. Preferably the two molecules will hybridize under conditions of high stringency.

As used herein, inhibitor of an endotheliase encompasses any substances that prohibit or decrease production, post-translational modification(s), maturation, or membrane localization of the endotheliase, or any substances that

- 30 interfere with or decrease the proteolytic efficacy of the endotheliase.

As used herein, a method for treating or preventing disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis means that the

-23-

diseases and the symptoms associated with the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis are alleviated, reduced, ameliorated, prevented, placed in a state of remission, or maintained in a state of remission. It also means that the hallmarks of pathological angiogenesis are eliminated, reduced or prevented by the

- 5 treatment. Non-limiting examples of the hallmarks of the pathological angiogenesis include uncontrolled degradation of the basement membrane and proximal extracellular matrix of the endothelial cells, migration, division, and organization of the endothelial cells into new functioning capillaries, and the persistence of such functioning capillaries.
- 10 As used herein, a method for treating or preventing disease or disorder associated with deficient angiogenesis means that the diseases and the symptoms associated with the deficient angiogenesis are alleviated, reduced, ameliorated, prevented, placed in a state of remission, or maintained in a state of remission.
- 15 As used herein, operatively linked or operationally associated refers to the functional relationship of DNA with regulatory and effector sequences of nucleotides, such as promoters, enhancers, transcriptional and translational stop sites, and other signal sequences. For example, operative linkage of DNA to a promoter refers to the physical and functional relationship between the DNA and
- 20 the promoter such that the transcription of such DNA is initiated from the promoter by an RNA polymerase that specifically recognizes, binds to and transcribes the DNA. In order to optimize expression and/or *in vitro* transcription, it may be necessary to remove, add or alter 5' untranslated portions of the clones to eliminate extra, potential inappropriate alternative
- 25 translation initiation (*i.e.*, start) codons or other sequences that may interfere with or reduce expression, either at the level of transcription or translation. Alternatively, consensus ribosome binding sites (see, *e.g.*, Kozak, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 266:19867-19870 (1991)) can be inserted immediately 5' of the start codon and may enhance expression. The desirability of (or need for) such
- 30 modification may be empirically determined.

As used herein, pharmaceutically acceptable salts, esters or other derivatives of the conjugates include any salts, esters or derivatives that may be

-24-

readily prepared by those of skill in this art using known methods for such derivatization and that produce compounds that may be administered to animals or humans without substantial toxic effects and that either are pharmaceutically active or are prodrugs.

- 5        As used herein, a prodrug is a compound that, upon in vivo administration, is metabolized or otherwise converted to the biologically, pharmaceutically or therapeutically active form of the compound. To produce a prodrug, the pharmaceutically active compound is modified such that the active compound will be regenerated by metabolic processes. The prodrug may be
- 10      designed to alter the metabolic stability or the transport characteristics of a drug, to mask side effects or toxicity, to improve the flavor of a drug or to alter other characteristics or properties of a drug. By virtue of knowledge of pharmacodynamic processes and drug metabolism in vivo, those of skill in this art, once a pharmaceutically active compound is known, can design prodrugs of
- 15      the compound (see, e.g., Nogradi (1985) Medicinal Chemistry A Biochemical Approach, Oxford University Press, New York, pages 388-392).

As used herein, a drug identified by the screening methods provided herein refers to any compound that is a candidate for use as a therapeutic or as lead compound for designed a therapeutic. Such compounds can be small molecules, including small organic molecules, peptides, peptide mimetics, antisense molecules, antibodies, fragments of antibodies, recombinant antibodies and other such compound which can serve as drug candidate or lead compound.

- 20      As used herein, production by recombinant means by using recombinant DNA methods means the use of the well known methods of molecular biology for expressing proteins encoded by cloned DNA.
- 25

As used herein, a promoter region or promoter element refers to a segment of DNA or RNA that controls transcription of the DNA or RNA to which it is operatively linked. The promoter region includes specific sequences that are sufficient for RNA polymerase recognition, binding and transcription initiation.

- 30      This portion of the promoter region is referred to as the promoter. In addition, the promoter region includes sequences that modulate this recognition, binding and transcription initiation activity of RNA polymerase. These sequences may be

-25-

*cis* acting or may be responsive to *trans* acting factors. Promoters, depending upon the nature of the regulation, may be constitutive or regulated. Exemplary promoters contemplated for use in prokaryotes include the bacteriophage T7 and T3 promoters.

- 5        As used herein, a receptor refers to a molecule that has an affinity for a given ligand. Receptors may be naturally-occurring or synthetic molecules. Receptors may also be referred to in the art as anti-ligands. As used herein, the receptor and anti-ligand are interchangeable. Receptors can be used in their unaltered state or as aggregates with other species. Receptors may be attached,
- 10      covalently or noncovalently, or in physical contact with, to a binding member, either directly or indirectly via a specific binding substance or linker. Examples of receptors, include, but are not limited to: antibodies, cell membrane receptors surface receptors and internalizing receptors, monoclonal antibodies and antisera reactive with specific antigenic determinants [such as on viruses, cells, or other materials], drugs, polynucleotides, nucleic acids, peptides, cofactors, lectins, sugars, polysaccharides, cells, cellular membranes, and organelles.
- 15      Examples of receptors and applications using such receptors, include but are not restricted to:
  - a) enzymes: specific transport proteins or enzymes essential to survival of microorganisms, which could serve as targets for antibiotic [ligand] selection;
  - b) antibodies: identification of a ligand-binding site on the antibody molecule that combines with the epitope of an antigen of interest may be investigated; determination of a sequence that mimics an antigenic epitope may lead to the development of vaccines of which the immunogen is based on one or more of such sequences or lead to the development of related diagnostic agents or compounds useful in therapeutic treatments such as for auto-immune diseases
  - c) nucleic acids: identification of ligand, such as protein or RNA, binding sites;
  - d) catalytic polypeptides: polymers, preferably polypeptides, that are capable of promoting a chemical reaction involving the conversion of one or more reactants to one or more products; such polypeptides generally include a binding site specific for at least one reactant or reaction intermediate and an

-26-

active functionality proximate to the binding site, in which the functionality is capable of chemically modifying the bound reactant [see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,215,899];

- e) hormone receptors: determination of the ligands that bind with high affinity to a receptor is useful in the development of hormone replacement therapies; for example, identification of ligands that bind to such receptors may lead to the development of drugs to control blood pressure; and
- f) opiate receptors: determination of ligands that bind to the opiate receptors in the brain is useful in the development of less-addictive replacements for morphine and related drugs.

As used herein, sample refers to anything which may contain an analyte for which an analyte assay is desired. The sample may be a biological sample, such as a biological fluid or a biological tissue. Examples of biological fluids include urine, blood, plasma, serum, saliva, semen, stool, sputum, cerebral spinal fluid, tears, mucus, amniotic fluid or the like. Biological tissues are aggregate of cells, usually of a particular kind together with their intercellular substance that form one of the structural materials of a human, animal, plant, bacterial, fungal or viral structure, including connective, epithelium, muscle and nerve tissues. Examples of biological tissues also include organs, tumors, lymph nodes, arteries and individual cell(s).

As used herein: stringency of hybridization in determining percentage mismatch is as follows:

- 1) high stringency: 0.1 x SSPE, 0.1% SDS, 65°C
- 2) medium stringency: 0.2 x SSPE, 0.1% SDS, 50°C
- 25 3) low stringency: 1.0 x SSPE, 0.1% SDS, 50°C

It is understood that equivalent stringencies may be achieved using alternative buffers, salts and temperatures.

The term substantially identical or homologous or similar varies with the context as understood by those skilled in the relevant art and generally means at least 70%, preferably means at least 80%, more preferably at least 90%, and most preferably at least 95% identity.

-27-

As used herein, substantially identical to a product means sufficiently similar so that the property of interest is sufficiently unchanged so that the substantially identical product can be used in place of the product.

- As used herein, substantially pure means sufficiently homogeneous to
- 5 appear free of readily detectable impurities as determined by standard methods of analysis, such as thin layer chromatography (TLC), gel electrophoresis and high performance liquid chromatography (HPLC), used by those of skill in the art to assess such purity, or sufficiently pure such that further purification would not detectably alter the physical and chemical properties, such as enzymatic and
- 10 biological activities, of the substance. Methods for purification of the compounds to produce substantially chemically pure compounds are known to those of skill in the art. A substantially chemically pure compound may, however, be a mixture of stereoisomers or isomers. In such instances, further purification might increase the specific activity of the compound.
- 15 As used herein, target cell refers to a cell that expresses an endotheliase naturally.
- As used herein, test substance refers to a chemically defined compound (e.g., organic molecules, inorganic molecules, organic/inorganic molecules, proteins, peptides, nucleic acids, oligonucleotides, lipids, polysaccharides,
- 20 saccharides, or hybrids among these molecules such as glycoproteins, etc.) or mixtures of compounds (e.g., a library of test compounds, natural extracts or culture supernatants, etc.) whose effect on an endotheliase, or a domain thereof, is determined by the disclosed and/or claimed methods herein.
- As used herein, the terms a therapeutic agent, therapeutic regimen,
- 25 radioprotectant, chemotherapeutic mean conventional drugs and drug therapies, including vaccines, which are known to those skilled in the art. Radiotherapeutic agents are well known in the art.
- As used herein, treatment means any manner in which the symptoms of a condition, disorder or disease are ameliorated or otherwise beneficially altered.
- 30 Treatment also encompasses any pharmaceutical use of the compositions herein.

-28-

As used herein, vector (or plasmid) refers to discrete elements that are used to introduce heterologous DNA into cells for either expression or replication thereof. The vectors typically remain episomal, but may be designed to effect integration of a gene or portion thereof into a chromosome of the genome. Also 5 contemplated are vectors that are artificial chromosomes, such as yeast artificial chromosomes and mammalian artificial chromosomes. Selection and use of such vehicles are well known to those of skill in the art. An expression vector includes vectors capable of expressing DNA that is operatively linked with regulatory sequences, such as promoter regions, that are capable of effecting 10 expression of such DNA fragments. Thus, an expression vector refers to a recombinant DNA or RNA construct, such as a plasmid, a phage, recombinant virus or other vector that, upon introduction into an appropriate host cell, results in expression of the cloned DNA. Appropriate expression vectors are well known to those of skill in the art and include those that are replicable in 15 eukaryotic cells and/or prokaryotic cells and those that remain episomal or those which integrate into the host cell genome.

As used herein, protein binding sequence refers to a protein or peptide sequence that is capable of specific binding to other protein or peptide sequences generally, to a set of protein or peptide sequences or to a particular 20 protein or peptide sequence.

As used herein, epitope tag refers to a short stretch of amino acid residues corresponding to an epitope to facilitate subsequent biochemical and immunological analysis of the epitope tagged protein or peptide. Epitope tagging is achieved by appending the sequence of the epitope tag to the protein- 25 encoding sequence in an appropriate expression vector. Epitope tagged proteins can be affinity purified using highly specific antibodies raised against the tags.

As used herein, metal binding sequence refers to a protein or peptide sequence that is capable of specific binding to metal ions generally, to a set of metal ions or to a particular metal ion.

30 As used herein, a composition refers to any mixture. It may be a solution, a suspension, liquid, powder, a paste, aqueous, non-aqueous or any combination thereof.

-29-

As used herein, a combination refers to any association between two or among more items.

As used herein, fluid refers to any composition that can flow. Fluids thus encompass compositions that are in the form of semi-solids, pastes, solutions,

- 5 aqueous mixtures, gels, lotions, creams and other such compositions.

For clarity of disclosure, and not by way of limitation, the detailed description is divided into the subsections that follow.

**B. ENDOTHELIASE PROTEINS AND DERIVATIVES AND ANALOGS**

**Protease involvement in angiogenesis**

- 10 In the initial stages of angiogenesis, microvascular endothelial cells of preexisting blood vessels locally degrade the underlying basal lamina and invade into the stroma of the tissue to be vascularized. It has been shown that this process requires a wide array of degradative enzymes (Mignatti and Rifkin, *Enzyme Protein*, 49(1-3):117-37 (1996)). Components of the plasminogen activator (PA)-plasmin system and the matrix metalloproteinase (MMP) family play important roles. PAs trigger a proteinase cascade that results in the generation of high local concentrations of plasmin and active MMPs. This increase in proteolytic activity has three major consequences: it permits extracellular matrix degradation and invasion of the vessel basal lamina,
- 15 20 generates extracellular matrix (ECM) degradation products that are chemotactic for endothelial cells, and activates and mobilizes growth factors localized in the ECM. Five proteases, urokinase-type plasminogen activator, factor XII, protein C, trypsinogen IV, and a membrane-type serine protease 1 (MTSP1) that may be involved in these processes have been identified.
- 25 At least nine different MMPs have been identified. Among these are gelatinase A, which degrades collagen types IV and V, elastin and laminin and which is frequently overexpressed in stromal cells of malignant tumors (Vassalli and Pepper, *Nature*, 370:14-5 (1994)). Nucleic acid encoding a matrix metalloproteinase with a potential transmembrane domain has been cloned (Sato et al., *Nature*, 370:61-5 (1994)). Expression of the cloned gene product on the cell surface induces specific activation of pro-gelatinase A *in vitro* and enhances cellular invasion of the reconstituted basement membrane. Tumor cells of
- 30

-30-

invasive lung carcinomas, which contain activated forms of gelatinase A, were found to express the transcript and the gene product. Inhibition of protease activity through the use of wild-type and engineered eotins results in inhibition of rat prostate differentiation and retardation of the growth of human PC-3

- 5 prostatic cancer tumors (see, Takeuchi *et al.* *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. (USA)*, 96(20):11054-61 (1999)).

Thus, endothelial cells and proteases play key roles in angiogenesis and related processes. Furthermore, proteases can serve as therapeutic targets and points of intervention in processes relying on the protease activities.

- 10 As noted above, aberrant angiogenesis and processes related thereto have a role in a variety of disorders, including cancers, diabetic retinopathies, hyperproliferative disorders, restenosis, and others. As provided herein, because proteases are involved either directly or indirectly in angiogenesis, which is aberrant in a variety of disorders, altering the activity of proteases involved in  
15 angiogenesis could treat the resulting disorders. Thus, proteases involved in angiogenesis can serve as therapeutic targets and also in drug screening methodologies to identify compounds that modulate, particularly inhibit, angiogenesis.

- Provided herein is a class of proteases, designated herein as  
20 endotheliases. The proteases are endothelial cell transmembrane proteins proteins, which view of the role(s) of endothelial cells and proteases in angiogenesis and related processes, are directly or indirectly involved in the process of angiogenesis or processes related thereto. Thus, these proteases are therapeutic, diagnostic, prognostic targets for intervention in the process of  
25 angiogenesis, either for inhibition or activation thereof. In addition, these proteases, particularly the protease domains (extracellular domains) provide a means to screen for compounds that modulate angiogenesis.

- The endotheliases provided herein and the screening methods provided herein permit discovery of candidate compounds that modulate processes  
30 involved in the establishment and maintenance of the vasculature. These methods provide a means to select compounds that selectively bind to the endotheliases or interact therewith resulting an increase or decrease in the

-31-

protease activity of the endotheliase. Since the endotheliases occur on endothelial cells, which are intimately involved in processes related to establishment and maintenance of the vasculature, the compounds identified by the methods herein can have activity as anti-angiogenic or pro-angiogenic

5 agents.

#### **Endotheliases**

Thus, provided herein are endotheliases, including protease domains thereof. As noted, endotheliases are endothelial cell transmembrane proteins that include an extracellular domain that exhibits protease activity. By virtue of  
10 its expression on endothelial cells, these proteases participate directly or indirectly in processes involved in angiogenesis.

Substantially purified protease domains of endotheliase proteins and derivatives or analog thereof that can be bound by an antibody directed against such protease domain are provided. Also included are substantially purified  
15 protein that contain amino acid sequences that have at least 40%, more preferably 60% or greater, identity to the protease domain of the endotheliase proteins exemplified herein, where the percentage identity is determined over an amino acid sequence of identical size to the protease domain. More preferably, the sequence identity is at least 90% identical.  
20 In exemplary embodiments, two different endotheliases, including variant forms thereof, are provided. These include an endotheliase 1 and two splice variants of an endotheliase 2. Other members of the family may be identified by probing for genes or searching libraries for genes that have sequence identity, particularly at least 40%, 60%, 80%, 90% or greater sequence identity to the  
25 protease domain of an endotheliase identified herein, or that hybridize under conditions of high stringency to the full-length of the nucleic acid encoding a protease domain of an endotheliase provided herein.

Alternatively, and as a way of identifying endotheliases that may have lower sequence identity, an endotheliase may be identified by the methods  
30 exemplified herein, such by identifying ESTs or other nucleic acid fragments that have sequences similar to a protease and then using such fragments as probes to identify and select cDNA clones encoding full-length proteases or protease

-32-

domains thereof, identifying those that have the characteristics of transmembrane proteins, and then determining the gene expression profile to identify those that are expressed on the surface of endothelial cells. Encoded proteins that have protease activity, that include a transmembrane domain and 5 an extracellular domain, and that are expressed in endothelial cells are endotheliases. Any method for identification of genes encoding proteins (or proteins) that encode a transmembrane protease expressed on an endothelial cell is contemplated herein.

As described below, exemplary nucleic acid molecules encoding an 10 endotheliase and/or protease domain therein are provided. Full-length clones encoding endotheliase or a protease domain thereof can be obtained by any methods known in the art, including, but are not limited to, PCR amplification using synthetic primers that hybridize to the 3' and 5' ends of an endotheliase and/or by cloning from a cDNA or genomic library using a PCR amplification 15 product or an oligonucleotide specific for the gene sequence. Homologs (e.g., nucleic acids of the above-listed genes of species other than human) or other related sequences (e.g., paralogs) can be obtained by low, moderate or high stringency hybridization with all or a portion of the particular sequence provided as a probe using methods well known in the art for nucleic acid hybridization and 20 cloning.

For recombinant expression of one or more of the proteins, the nucleic acid containing all or a portion of the nucleotide sequence encoding the protein can be inserted into an appropriate expression vector, i.e., a vector that contains the necessary elements for the transcription and translation of the inserted 25 protein coding sequence. The necessary transcriptional and translational signals can also be supplied by the native promoter for endotheliase genes, and/or their flanking regions.

Full-length endotheliases and domains thereof, particularly the protease domain of an endotheliase are provided herein. The domain or portion thereof 30 the endotheliase contains at least 10, 20, 30, 40, or 50 contiguous amino acids of an endotheliase. In specific embodiments, such domains or fragments are not larger than 35, 100, 200 or 500 amino acids. Derivatives or analogs of

-33-

endotheliases include but are not limited to molecules containing regions that are substantially homologous to endotheliase in various embodiments, at least 30%, 40%, 50%, 60%, 70%, 80%, 90% or 95% identity over an amino acid sequence of identical size or when compared to an aligned sequence in which

- 5 the alignment is done by a computer homology program known in the art or whose encoding nucleic acid is capable of hybridizing to a sequence encoding endotheliase under stringent, moderately stringent, or nonstringent conditions.

Endotheliase derivatives can be made by altering their sequences by substitutions, additions or deletions that provide for functionally equivalent 10 molecules. Due to the degeneracy of nucleotide coding sequences, other DNA sequences which encode substantially the same amino acid sequence as an endotheliase gene can be used herein. These include but are not limited to nucleotide sequences containing all or portions of endotheliase genes that are altered by the substitution of different codons that encode the amino acid

- 15 residue within the sequence, thus producing a silent change. Endotheliase derivatives include, but are not limited to, those containing, as a primary amino acid sequence, all or part of the amino acid sequence of endotheliase, including altered sequences in which functionally equivalent amino acid residues are substituted for residues within the sequence resulting in a silent change. For

20 example, one or more amino acid residues within the sequence can be substituted by another amino acid of a similar polarity which acts as a functional equivalent, resulting in a silent alteration. Substitutes for an amino acid within the sequence may be selected from other members of the class to which the amino acid belongs. For example, the nonpolar (hydrophobic) amino acids

- 25 include alanine, leucine, isoleucine, valine, proline, phenylalanine, tryptophan and methionine. The polar neutral amino acids include glycine, serine, threonine, cysteine, tyrosine, asparagine, and glutamine. The positively charged (basic) amino acids include arginine, lysine and histidine. The negatively charged (acidic) amino acids include aspartic acid and glutamic acid.

- 30 Exemplary of the endotheliase provided herein are endotheliase 1 and endotheliase 2.

-34-

**Endotheliase 1 and nucleic acids encoding endotheliase 1**

**Nucleic acids**

- The identification and cloning of nucleic acid encoding the protease domain of endotheliase 1 is described in Example 1. Provided herein is nucleic acid that encodes the protease domain of an endotheliase 1. Such nucleic acid molecule those that encode the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ. ID NO:2; it also includes the amino acid 190- or 191-424 of sequence of SEQ ID NO. 22; the Arg is optionally included). Also provided herein are nucleic acids that hybridize to a nucleic acid containing the sequence of nucleotides set forth in the SEQ. ID No. 1. Hybridization is preferably under moderate conditions and more preferably high stringency conditions and is such that the nucleic acid of interest hybridizes along its full length the nucleic acid that encodes the protease domain endotheliase 1 and is considered to be an endotheliase 1 by virtue of its expression in endothelial cells, activity as a protease and similarity as assessed by hybridization or by having sequence identify of at least about 60%, more preferably more than about 75% sequence identity, more preferably more than about 90% to the protease domain of endotheliase 1 exemplified herein. Such proteins will also exhibit protease activity. Also contemplated herein are proteins that include conservative amino acid sequence changes, such as those set forth in Table 1 above, and retain protease activity.

The endotheliase 1 protease domain and encoding nucleic acid is contemplated for use in the methods and cells and vectors described herein. The protease domain may be used as purified protein or may be part of a larger protein, such as the full length endotheliase 1.

- Also contemplated for use in the methods, vectors and cells is a full-length endotheliase 1. Exemplary of full-length endotheliase are endotheliases that include the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID No. 22, which provides full length endotheliases (see, International PCT application No. WO 00/5006). International PCT application No. WO 00/5006 provides a gene designated DESC1 used for diagnosis of squamous cell carcinoma or prostate cancer. DESC1 is shown herein to encode an endotheliase 1. DESC1 and the encoded protein (see SEQ ID No. 22) are contemplated for use in the methods,

-35-

cells and vectors provided herein. The PCT application does not suggest using the protease domain thereof for any purpose.

#### Proteins

Provided herein are protease domains of an endotheliase, including

- 5 endotheliase 1. A substantially purified protease domain of an endotheliase protein that is encoded by the nucleic acid molecules that encode the nucleic acids are provided. In particular, the protease domain contains the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID No. 2 or a fragment thereof that exhibits protease activity or contains a sequence of amino acids that hybridizes to a  
10 nucleic acid molecule that encodes the protein of SEQ ID NO. 2.

In one exemplary embodiment, the substantially purified protease domain is encoded by the sequence of nucleic acids set forth in SEQ. ID No. 1 or hybridizes thereto along its full length under high stringency conditions and has activity as a protease. In other embodiments, a substantially purified derivative

- 15 or analog of the protease domain of the endotheliase protein is provided, which derivative or analog is able to be bound by an antibody directed against such protease domain.

In another embodiment, the substantially purified protein contains a sequence of amino acids that has at least 60% identity to the protease domain

- 20 of the endotheliase 1 protein is provided, wherein the percentage identity is determined over an amino acid sequence of identical size to the protease domain. More preferably, the sequence identity is at least 90% identical.

In specific aspects, the protease domain peptide, derivatives or analogs of the protease domain of the endotheliase protein are from animals, including

- 25 mammals, such as, but are not limited to, mouse, rat, chicken and human origin and is functionally active, *i.e.*, capable of exhibiting one or more functional activities associated with the domains, *e.g.*, serine protease activity, immunogenicity or antigenicity.

#### Endotheliase 2 and nucleic acids encoding endotheliase 2

- 30 The cloning of endotheliase 2 and expression profile thereof is described in Example 2. Two splice variant forms of endotheliase 2 designated endotheliase 2-S and endotheliase 2-L are also provided (see FIG. 1 for the

-36-

domain organization thereof; see also EXAMPLE 2). The open reading frame of the nucleic acid encoding endotheliase 2-S (SEQ ID No. 3) is composed of 1,689 bp, which translates to a 562-amino acid protein (SEQ ID No. 4), while the ORF of endotheliase 2-L is composed of 2,067 bp (SEQ ID No. 5), which translates to 5 a 688-amino acid protein (SEQ ID No. 6).

The nucleic acid encoding the protease domain of endotheliase 2-S is composed of 729 bp which translates to a 242-amino acid protein (amino acids 321-562 of SEQ ID Nos. 3 and 4), while that of endotheliase 2-L is composed of 1,107 bp, which translates to a 368-amino acid protein (amino acids 321-688 of 10 SEQ ID Nos. 5 and 6). The domain organization of each form is depicted in Figure 1.

The full-length and protease domains of endotheliase 2 as well as other domains (see Fig. 1) are provided herein as are cells, vectors and methods that use the proteins and/or encoding nucleic acid.

15 Also provided herein are nucleic acids that hybridize to a nucleic acid containing the sequence of nucleotides set forth in SEQ. ID No. 3 or 5. Hybridization is preferably effected under moderate conditions and more preferably high stringency conditions and is such that the nucleic acid of interest hybridizes along its full length the nucleic acid that encodes the protease domain 20 of endotheliase 2 and is considered to encode an endotheliase 2 by virtue of endogenous expression of the protein in endothelial cells, activity as a protease and similarity as assessed by hybridization or by having sequence identify of at least about 60%, more preferably more than about 85% sequence identity, more preferably more than about 90% to the protease domain of endotheliase 2 25 exemplified herein. Such encoded proteins will also exhibit protease activity. The nucleic acids are contemplated for use in vectors, cells and methods provided herein.

#### Endotheliase-2 proteins

Any and all of the above-noted endotheliases and/or protease domains 30 thereof, such as those that include the sequences of amino acids in SEQ ID Nos. 2, 4, 6 and 22 or are encoded by nucleic acid that hybridize thereto under the conditions as described above are contemplated for use in the methods herein.

-37-

Also contemplated herein are proteins that include conservative amino acid sequence changes, such as those set forth in Table 1 above, and retain protease activity.

- 5       **Vectors, plasmids and cells that contain nucleic acids encoding an endotheliase or protease domain thereof.**
- Also provided are vectors that contain nucleic acid encoding the endotheliases. Cells containing the vectors are also provided. The cells include eukaryotic and prokaryotic cells, and the vectors are any suitable for use therein.
- 10      Prokaryotic and eukaryotic cells, including endothelial cells, containing the vectors are provided. Such cells include bacterial cells, yeast cells, fungal cells, plant cells, insect cells and animal cells. The cells are used to produce an endotheliase or protease domain thereof by growing the above-described cells under conditions whereby the encoded endotheliase or protease domain of the
- 15      endotheliase is expressed by the cell, and recovering the expressed protease domain protein. For purposes herein, the protease domain is preferably secreted into the medium.
- In one embodiment, the vectors include a sequence of nucleotides that encodes a polypeptide that has protease activity and contains all or a portion of
- 20      only the protease domain, or multiple copies thereof, of an endotheliase are provided. Also provided are vectors that comprise a sequence of nucleotides that encodes the protease domain and additional portions of an endotheliase up to and including a full length endotheliase, as well as multiple copies thereof, are also provided. The vectors may selected for expression of the endotheliase or
- 25      protease domain thereof in the cell or such that the endotheliase is expressed as a transmembrane protein. Alternatively, the vectors may include signals necessary for secretion of encoded proteins. When the protease domain is expressed the nucleic acid is preferably linked to a secretion signal, such as the *Saccharomyces cerevisiae* α mating factor signal sequence or a portion thereof.
- 30      A variety of host-vector systems may be used to express the protein coding sequence. These include but are not limited to mammalian cell systems infected with virus (*e.g.* vaccinia virus, adenovirus, etc.); insect cell systems

infected with virus (*e.g.* baculovirus); microorganisms such as yeast containing yeast vectors; or bacteria transformed with bacteriophage, DNA, plasmid DNA, or cosmid DNA. The expression elements of vectors vary in their strengths and specificities. Depending on the host-vector system used, any one of a number 5 of suitable transcription and translation elements may be used.

- Any methods known to those of skill in the art for the insertion of DNA fragments into a vector may be used to construct expression vectors containing a chimeric gene containing of appropriate transcriptional/translational control signals and protein coding sequences. These methods may include *in vitro* 10 recombinant DNA and synthetic techniques and *in vivo* recombinants (genetic recombination). Expression of nucleic acid sequences encoding endotheliase, or domains, derivatives, fragments or homologs thereof, may be regulated by a second nucleic acid sequence so that the genes or fragments thereof are expressed in a host transformed with the recombinant DNA molecule(s). For 15 example, expression of the proteins may be controlled by any promoter/enhancer known in the art. In a specific embodiment, the promoter is not native to the genes for endotheliase. Promoters which may be used include but are not limited to the SV40 early promoter (Benoist and Chambon, *Nature* 290:304-310 (1981)), the promoter contained in the 3' long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma 20 virus (Yamamoto et al., *Cell* 22:787-797 (1980)), the herpes thymidine kinase promoter (Wagner et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 78:1441-1445 (1981)), the regulatory sequences of the metallothionein gene (Brinster et al., *Nature* 296:39-42 (1982)); prokaryotic expression vectors such as the  $\beta$ -lactamase promoter (Villa-Kamaroff et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 75:3727-3731 (1978)) or the 25 *tac* promoter (DeBoer et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 80:21-25 (1983)); see also "Useful Proteins from Recombinant Bacteria": in *Scientific American* 242:79-94 (1980)); plant expression vectors containing the nopaline synthetase promoter (Herrera-Estrella et al., *Nature* 303:209-213 (1984)) or the cauliflower mosaic virus 35S RNA promoter (Garder et al., *Nucleic Acids Res.* 9:2871 30 (1981)), and the promoter of the photosynthetic enzyme ribulose bisphosphate carboxylase (Herrera-Estrella et al., *Nature* 310:115-120 (1984)); promoter elements from yeast and other fungi such as the Gal4 promoter, the alcohol

-39-

- dehydrogenase promoter, the phosphoglycerol kinase promoter, the alkaline phosphatase promoter, and the following animal transcriptional control regions that exhibit tissue specificity and have been used in transgenic animals: elastase I gene control region which is active in pancreatic acinar cells (Swift et al., *Cell* 38:639-646 (1984); Ornitz et al., *Cold Spring Harbor Symp. Quant. Biol.* 50:399-409 (1986); MacDonald, *Hepatology* 7:425-515 (1987)); insulin gene control region which is active in pancreatic beta cells (Hanahan et al., *Nature* 315:115-122 (1985)), immunoglobulin gene control region which is active in lymphoid cells (Grosschedl et al., *Cell* 38:647-658 (1984); Adams et al., *Nature* 318:533-538 (1985); Alexander et al., *Mol. Cell Biol.* 7:1436-1444 (1987)), mouse mammary tumor virus control region which is active in testicular, breast, lymphoid and mast cells (Leder et al., *Cell* 45:485-495 (1986)), albumin gene control region which is active in liver (Pinckert et al., *Genes and Devel.* 1:268-276 (1987)), alpha-fetoprotein gene control region which is active in liver (Krumlauf et al., *Mol. Cell. Biol.* 5:1639-1648 (1985); Hammer et al., *Science* 235:53-58 (1987)), alpha-1 antitrypsin gene control region which is active in liver (Kelsey et al., *Genes and Devel.* 1:161-171 (1987)), beta globin gene control region which is active in myeloid cells (Mogram et al., *Nature* 315:338-340 (1985); Kollias et al., *Cell* 46:89-94 (1986)), myelin basic protein gene control region which is active in oligodendrocyte cells of the brain (Readhead et al., *Cell* 48:703-712 (1987)), myosin light chain-2 gene control region which is active in skeletal muscle (Sani, *Nature* 314:283-286 (1985)), and gonadotrophic releasing hormone gene control region which is active in gonadotrophs of the hypothalamus (Mason et al., *Science* 234:1372-1378 (1986)).
- In a specific embodiment, a vector is used that contains a promoter operably linked to nucleic acids encoding an endotheliase, or a domain, fragment, derivative or homolog, thereof, one or more origins of replication, and optionally, one or more selectable markers (e.g., an antibiotic resistance gene). Expression vectors containing the coding sequences, or portions thereof, of an endotheliase, is made, for example, by subcloning the coding portions into the EcoRI restriction site of each of the three pGEX vectors (glutathione S-transferase expression vectors (Smith and Johnson, *Gene* 7:31-40 (1988)). This

-40-

allows for the expression of products in the correct reading frame. Preferred vectors and systems for expression of the protease domains of the endotheliases are the *Pichia* vectors, particularly those designed for secretion of the encoded proteins. One exemplary vector is described in the EXAMPLES.

- 5        The vectors are introduced into host cells and the proteins expressed therein. Once a recombinant cell expressing an endotheliase protein, or a domain, fragment or derivative thereof, is identified, the individual gene product can be isolated and analyzed. This is achieved by assays based on the physical and/or functional properties of the protein, including, but not limited to,  
10      radioactive labeling of the product followed by analysis by gel electrophoresis, immunoassay, cross-linking to marker-labeled product  
            The endotheliase proteins may be isolated and purified by standard methods known in the art (either from natural sources or recombinant host cells expressing the complexes or proteins), including but not restricted to column  
15      chromatography (e.g., ion exchange, affinity, gel exclusion, reversed-phase high pressure, fast protein liquid, etc.), differential centrifugation, differential solubility, or by any other standard technique used for the purification of proteins. Functional properties may be evaluated using any suitable assay known in the art.  
20      Alternatively, once an endotheliase or its domain or derivative is identified, the amino acid sequence of the protein can be deduced from the nucleotide sequence of the gene which encodes it. As a result, the protein or its domain or derivative can be synthesized by standard chemical methods known in the art (e.g. see Hunkapiller et al, *Nature* 310:105-111 (1984)).  
25      Manipulations of endotheliase sequences may be made at the protein level. Also contemplated herein are endotheliase proteins, domains thereof, derivatives or analogs or fragments thereof, which are differentially modified during or after translation, e.g., by glycosylation, acetylation, phosphorylation, amidation, derivatization by known protecting/blocking groups, proteolytic  
30      cleavage, linkage to an antibody molecule or other cellular ligand, etc. Any of numerous chemical modifications may be carried out by known techniques, including but not limited to specific chemical cleavage by cyanogen bromide,

-41-

trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain, V8 protease, NaBH<sub>4</sub>, acetylation, formylation, oxidation, reduction, metabolic synthesis in the presence of tunicamycin, etc.

In specific embodiments, the endotheliases are modified to include a fluorescent label. In other specific embodiments, the endotheliase is modified to  
5 have a heterofunctional reagent, such heterofunctional reagents can be used to crosslink the members of the complex.

In addition, domains, analogs and derivatives of an endotheliase can be chemically synthesized. For example, a peptide corresponding to a portion of an endotheliase, which includes the desired domain or which mediates the desired  
10 activity *in vitro* can be synthesized by use of a peptide synthesizer.

Furthermore, if desired, nonclassical amino acids or chemical amino acid analogs can be introduced as a substitution or addition into the endotheliase sequence.

Non-classical amino acids include but are not limited to the D-isomers of the common amino acids, α-amino isobutyric acid, 4-aminobutyric acid, Abu,

15 2-aminobutyric acid, ε-Abu, ε-Ahx, 6-amino hexanoic acid, Aib, 2-amino isobutyric acid, 3-amino propionic acid, ornithine, norleucine, norvaline, hydroxyproline, sarcosine, citrulline, cysteic acid, t-butylglycine, t-butylalanine, phenylglycine, cyclohexylalanine, β-alanine, fluoro-amino acids, designer amino acids such as β-methyl amino acids, Ca-methyl amino acids, Na-methyl amino  
20 acids, and amino acid analogs in general. Furthermore, the amino acid can be D (dextrorotary) or L (levorotary).

In cases where natural products are suspected of being mutant or are isolated from new species, the amino acid sequence of the endotheliase isolated from the natural source, as well as those expressed *in vitro*, or from synthesized  
25 expression vectors *in vivo* or *in vitro*, can be determined from analysis of the DNA sequence, or alternatively, by direct sequencing of the isolated protein. Such analysis may be performed by manual sequencing or through use of an automated amino acid sequenator.

#### C. Identification and isolation of endotheliase genes

30 Any method known to those of skill in the art for identification of nucleic acids that encode desired genes may be used. Any method available in the art can be used to obtain a full length (*i.e.*, encompassing the entire coding region)

-42-

- cDNA or genomic DNA clone encoding an endotheliase. In particular, the polymerase chain reaction (PCR) can be used to amplify a sequence identified as being differentially expressed in tissues with aberrant level of angiogenesis, e.g., nucleic acids containing the nucleotide sequences of endotheliase (SEQ. NO: 1, 5 3, 5 or 22), in a genomic or cDNA library. Oligonucleotide primers that hybridize to sequences at the 3' and 5' termini of the identified sequences can be used as primers to amplify by PCR sequences from a nucleic acid sample (RNA or DNA), preferably a cDNA library, from an appropriate source (e.g., tumor or cancer tissue).
- 10 PCR can be carried out, e.g., by use of a Perkin-Elmer Cetus thermal cycler and Taq polymerase (Gene Amp™). The DNA being amplified can include mRNA or cDNA or genomic DNA from any eukaryotic species. One can choose to synthesize several different degenerate primers, for use in the PCR reactions. It is also possible to vary the stringency of hybridization conditions used in
- 15 priming the PCR reactions, to amplify nucleic acid homologs (e.g., to obtain *endotheliase* sequences from species other than humans or to obtain human sequences with homology to *endotheliase*) by allowing for greater or lesser degrees of nucleotide sequence similarity between the known nucleotide sequence and the nucleic acid homolog being isolated. For cross species
- 20 hybridization, low stringency conditions are preferred. For same species hybridization, moderately stringent conditions are preferred. After successful amplification of the nucleic acid containing all or a portion of the identified endotheliase sequence or of a nucleic acid encoding all or a portion of an endotheliase homolog, that segment may be molecularly cloned and sequenced,
- 25 and used as a probe to isolate a complete cDNA or genomic clone. This, in turn, will permit the determination of the gene's complete nucleotide sequence, the analysis of its expression, and the production of its protein product for functional analysis. Once the nucleotide sequence is determined, an open reading frame encoding the endotheliase gene protein product can be determined by any
- 30 method well known in the art for determining open reading frames, for example, using publicly available computer programs for nucleotide sequence analysis. Once an open reading frame is defined, it is routine to determine the amino acid

-43-

sequence of the protein encoded by the open reading frame. In this way, the nucleotide sequences of the entire endotheliase genes as well as the amino acid sequences of endotheliase proteins and analogs may be identified.

- Any eukaryotic cell potentially can serve as the nucleic acid source for
- 5 the molecular cloning of the endotheliase gene. The nucleic acids can be isolated from vertebrate, mammalian, human, porcine, bovine, feline, avian, equine, canine, as well as additional primate sources, insects, plants, etc. The DNA may be obtained by standard procedures known in the art from cloned DNA (e.g., a DNA "library"), by chemical synthesis, by cDNA cloning, or by the
  - 10 cloning of genomic DNA, or fragments thereof, purified from the desired cell (see, for example, Sambrook et al., 1989, Molecular Cloning, A Laboratory Manual, 2d Ed., Cold Spring Harbor Laboratory Press, Cold Spring Harbor, New York; Glover, D.M. (ed.), 1985, DNA Cloning: A Practical Approach, MRL Press, Ltd., Oxford, U.K. Vol. I, II). Clones derived from genomic DNA may contain
  - 15 regulatory and intron DNA regions in addition to coding regions; clones derived from cDNA will contain only exon sequences. Whatever the source, the gene should be molecularly cloned into a suitable vector for propagation of the gene.

- In the molecular cloning of the gene from genomic DNA, DNA fragments are generated, some of which will encode the desired gene. The DNA may be
- 20 cleaved at specific sites using various restriction enzymes. Alternatively, one may use DNase in the presence of manganese to fragment the DNA, or the DNA can be physically sheared, for example, by sonication. The linear DNA fragments can then be separated according to size by standard techniques, including but not limited to, agarose and polyacrylamide gel electrophoresis and
  - 25 column chromatography.

- Once the DNA fragments are generated, identification of the specific DNA fragment containing the desired gene may be accomplished in a number of ways. For example, a portion of the endotheliase (of any species) gene (e.g., a PCR amplification product obtained as described above or an oligonucleotide
- 30 having a sequence of a portion of the known nucleotide sequence) or its specific RNA, or a fragment thereof be purified and labeled, and the generated DNA fragments may be screened by nucleic acid hybridization to the labeled probe

-44-

- (Benton and Davis, *Science* 196:180 (1977); Grunstein and Hogness, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 72:3961 (1975)). Those DNA fragments with substantial homology to the probe will hybridize. It is also possible to identify the appropriate fragment by restriction enzyme digestion(s) and comparison of
- 5 fragment sizes with those expected according to a known restriction map if such is available or by DNA sequence analysis and comparison to the known nucleotide sequence of endotheliase. Further selection can be carried out on the basis of the properties of the gene. Alternatively, the presence of the gene may be detected by assays based on the physical, chemical, or immunological
- 10 properties of its expressed product. For example, cDNA clones, or DNA clones which hybrid-select the proper mRNAs, can be selected which produce a protein that, e.g., has similar or identical electrophoretic migration, isoelectric focusing behavior, proteolytic digestion maps, antigenic properties, serine protease activity or ability to promote angiogenesis, as known for the endotheliase. If an
- 15 anti-endotheliase antibody is available, the protein may be identified by binding of labeled antibody to the putatively endotheliase synthesizing clones, in an ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay)-type procedure.
- Alternatives to isolating the endotheliase genomic DNA include, but are not limited to, chemically synthesizing the gene sequence from a known
- 20 sequence or making cDNA to the mRNA that encodes the endotheliase protein. For example, RNA for cDNA cloning of the endotheliase gene can be isolated from cells expressing the protein. The identified and isolated nucleic acids can then be inserted into an appropriate cloning vector. A large number of vector-host systems known in the art may be used. Possible vectors include, but are
- 25 not limited to, plasmids or modified viruses, but the vector system must be compatible with the host cell used. Such vectors include, but are not limited to, bacteriophages such as lambda derivatives, or plasmids such as pBR322 or pUC plasmid derivatives or the Bluescript vector (Stratagene, La Jolla, CA). The insertion into a cloning vector can, for example, be accomplished by ligating the
- 30 DNA fragment into a cloning vector which has complementary cohesive termini. However, if the complementary restriction sites used to fragment the DNA are not present in the cloning vector, the ends of the DNA molecules may be

-45-

enzymatically modified. Alternatively, any site desired may be produced by ligating nucleotide sequences (linkers) onto the DNA termini; these ligated linkers may comprise specific chemically synthesized oligonucleotides encoding restriction endonuclease recognition sequences. In an alternative method, the 5 cleaved vector and endotheliase gene may be modified by homopolymeric tailing. Recombinant molecules can be introduced into host cells via transformation, transfection, infection, electroporation, etc., so that many copies of the gene sequence are generated.

In an alternative method, the desired gene may be identified and isolated 10 after insertion into a suitable cloning vector in a "shot gun" approach. Enrichment for the desired gene, for example, by size fractionation, can be done before insertion into the cloning vector.

In specific embodiments, transformation of host cells with recombinant DNA molecules that incorporate the isolated endotheliase gene, cDNA, or 15 synthesized DNA sequence enables generation of multiple copies of the gene. Thus, the gene may be obtained in large quantities by growing transformants, isolating the recombinant DNA molecules from the transformants and, when necessary, retrieving the inserted gene from the isolated recombinant DNA.

#### D. SCREENING METHODS

- 20        1. **Methods for screening for compounds that modulate the activity of an endotheliase**
- Methods for identifying compounds that bind to or interact with an endotheliase, particularly, the protease domain thereof, are provided. The identified compounds are candidates or leads for identification of compounds for 25 treatments of tumors and other disorders and diseases involving aberrant angiogenesis. The endotheliases used in the methods include any endotheliase as defined herein, and preferably use the endotheliases 1 and 2 provided herein, and preferably the protease domains thereof. A variety of methods are provided herein. These methods may be performed in solution or in solid phase reactions 30 in which the endotheliase(s) or protease domain(s) thereof are linked, either directly or indirectly via a linker, to a solid support. Screening assays are

-46-

described in the Examples, and these assays have been used to identify candidate compounds.

- One method include the steps of (a) contacting the endotheliase or protease domain thereof with one or a plurality of test compounds under 5 conditions conducive to interaction between the ligand and the compounds; and (b) identifying one or more compounds in the plurality that specifically binds to the ligand.

- Another method provided herein includes the steps of a) contacting an endotheliase or protease domain thereof with a substrate of the endotheliase, 10 and detecting the proteolysis of the substrate, whereby the activity of the endotheliase is assessed; b) contacting the endotheliase with a substrate of the endotheliase in the presence of a test substance, and detecting the proteolysis of the substrate, whereby the activity of the endotheliase is assessed; and c) comparing the activity of the endotheliase assessed in steps a) and b), whereby 15 the activity measured in step a) differs from the activity measured in step b) indicates that the test substance modulates the activity of the endotheliase.

- In another embodiment, a plurality of the test substances are screened for simultaneously in the above screening method. In another embodiment, the endotheliase to be screened against is isolated from a target cell. In another 20 embodiment, the test substance is a therapeutic compound, such that a difference of the endotheliase activity measured in the presence and in the absence of the test substance indicates that the target cell responds to the therapeutic compound.

- In comparing the activity of an endotheliase in the presence and absence 25 of a test substance to assess whether the test substance is a modulator of the endotheliase, it is unnecessary to assay the activity in parallel, although such parallel measurement is preferred. It is possible to measure the activity of the endotheliase at one time point and compare the measured activity to a historical value of the activity of the endotheliase. For instance, one can measure the 30 activity of the endotheliase in the presence of a test substance and compare with historical value of the activity of the endotheliase measured previously in the absence of the test substance, and *vice versa*. This can be accomplished,

-47-

for example, by providing the activity of the endotheliase on an insert or pamphlet provided with a kit for conducting the assay.

Preferably, the endotheliase to be screened against is isolated from a target cell. More preferably, the test substance to be screened for is a therapeutic compound, and whereby a difference of the endotheliase measured in the presence and in the absence of the test substance indicates whether the target cell responds to the test substance.

Combinations and kits containing the combinations optionally including instructions for performing the assays are provided. The combinations include an endotheliase and a substrate of the endotheliase to be assayed; and, optionally reagents for detecting proteolysis of the substrate. The substrates, which are typically proteins subject to proteolysis by a particular endotheliase, can be identified empirically by testing the ability of the endotheliase to cleave the test substrate. Substrates that are cleaved most effectively (i.e., at the lowest concentrations and/or fastest rate or under desirable conditions), are identified.

Additionally provided herein is a kit containing the above-described combination. Preferably, the kit further includes instructions for identifying a modulator of the activity of an endotheliase. Any endotheliase is contemplated as target for identifying modulators of the activity thereof.

A variety of formats and detection protocols are known for performing screening assays. Any such formats and protocols may be adapted for identifying modulators of endotheliase activities. The following includes a discussion of exemplary protocols.

25        1.     **High throughput screening assays**

Although the above-described assay can be conducted where a single endotheliase is screened against, and/or a single test substance is screened for in one assay, the assay is preferably conducted in a high throughput screening mode, i.e., a plurality of the endotheliases are screened against and/or a plurality of the test substances are screened for simultaneously (*See generally, High Throughput Screening: The Discovery of Bioactive Substances* (Devlin, Ed.) Marcel Dekker, 1997; Sittampalam et al., *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 1(3):384-91

-48-

(1997); and Silverman et al., *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 2(3):397-403 (1998)). For example, the assay can be conducted in a multi-well (e.g., 24-, 48-, 96-, or 384-well), chip or array format.

- High-throughput screening (HTS) is the process of testing a large number
- 5 of diverse chemical structures against disease targets to identify "hits" (Sittampalam et al., *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 1(3):384-91 (1997)). Current state-of-the-art HTS operations are highly automated and computerized to handle sample preparation, assay procedures and the subsequent processing of large volumes of data.
- 10 Detection technologies employed in high-throughput screens depend on the type of biochemical pathway being investigated (Sittampalam et al., *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 1(3):384-91 (1997)). These methods include, radiochemical methods, such as the scintillation proximity assays (SPA), which can be adapted to a variety of enzyme assays (Lerner et al., *J. Biomol. Screening*, 1:135-143
- 15 (1996); Baker et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 239:20-24 (1996); Baum et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 237:129-134 (1996); and Sullivan et al., *J. Biomol. Screening*, 2:19-23 (1997)) and protein-protein interaction assays (Braunwalder et al., *J. Biomol. Screening*, 1:23-26 (1996); Sonatore et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 240:289-297 (1996); and Chen et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 271:25308-25315 (1996)), and non-
- 20 isotopic detection methods, including but are not limited to, colorimetric and luminescence detection methods, resonance energy transfer (RET) methods, time-resolved fluorescence (HTRF) methods, cell-based fluorescence assays, such as fluorescence resonance energy transfer (FRET) procedures (see, e.g., Gonzalez et al., *Biophys. J.*, 69:1272-1280 (1995)), fluorescence
- 25 polarization or anisotropy methods (see, e.g., Jameson et al., *Methods Enzymol.*, 246:283-300 (1995); Jolley, *J. Biomol. Screening*, 1:33-38 (1996); Lynch et al., *Anal. Biochem.*, 247:77-82 (1997)), fluorescence correlation spectroscopy (FCS) and other such methods.

## 2. Test Substances

- 30 Test compounds, including small molecules and libraries and collections thereof can be screened in the above-described assays and assays described below to identify compounds that modulate the activity an endotheliase.

-49-

Rational drug design methodologies that rely on computational chemistry may be used to screen and identify candidate compounds.

The compounds identified by the screening methods include inhibitors, including antagonists, and may be agonists. Compounds for screening are any 5 compounds and collections of compounds available, known or that can be prepared.

**a. Selection of Compounds**

Compounds can be selected for their potency and selectivity of inhibition of serine proteases, especially endotheliase. As described herein, and as 10 generally known, a target serine protease and its substrate are combined under assay conditions permitting reaction of the protease with its substrate. The assay is performed in the absence of test compound, and in the presence of increasing concentrations of the test compound. The concentration of test compound at which 50% of the serine protease activity is inhibited by the test 15 compound is the IC<sub>50</sub> value (Inhibitory Concentration) or EC<sub>50</sub> (Effective Concentration) value for that compound. Within a series or group of test compounds, those having lower IC<sub>50</sub> or EC<sub>50</sub> values are considered more potent inhibitors of the serine protease than those compounds having higher IC<sub>50</sub> or EC<sub>50</sub> values. The IC<sub>50</sub> measurement is often used for more simplistic assays, 20 whereas the EC<sub>50</sub> is often used for more complicated assays, such as those employing cells.

Preferred compounds according to this aspect have an IC<sub>50</sub> value of 100 nM or less as measured in an *in vitro* assay for inhibition of endotheliase activity. Especially preferred compounds have an IC<sub>50</sub> value of less than 100 nM.

25 The test compounds also are evaluated for selectivity toward a serine protease. As described herein, and as generally known, a test compound is assayed for its potency toward a panel of serine proteases and other enzymes and an IC<sub>50</sub> value or EC<sub>50</sub> value is determined for each test compound in each assay system. A compound that demonstrates a low IC<sub>50</sub> value or EC<sub>50</sub> value for 30 the target enzyme, *e.g.*, endotheliase, and a higher IC<sub>50</sub> value or EC<sub>50</sub> value for other enzymes within the test panel (*e.g.*, urokinase tissue plasminogen activator, thrombin, Factor Xa), is considered to be selective toward the target

-50-

enzyme. Generally, a compound is deemed selective if its IC<sub>50</sub> value or EC<sub>50</sub> value in the target enzyme assay is at least one order of magnitude less than the next smallest IC<sub>50</sub> value or EC<sub>50</sub> value measured in the selectivity panel of enzymes.

- 5        Presently preferred compounds have an IC<sub>50</sub> value of 100 nM or less as measured in an *in vitro* assay for inhibition of urokinase activity. Especially preferred compounds have an IC<sub>50</sub> value in the *in vitro* urokinase inhibition assay that is at least one order of magnitude smaller than the IC<sub>50</sub> value measured in the *in vitro* tPA inhibition assay. Compounds having a selectivity ratio of IC<sub>50</sub> u-  
10 PA assay: IC<sub>50</sub> endotheliase assay of greater than 100 are especially preferred.

Compounds are also evaluated for their activity *in vivo*. The type of assay chosen for evaluation of test compounds will depend on the pathological condition to be treated or prevented by use of the compound, as well as the route of administration to be evaluated for the test compound.

- 15      For instance, to evaluate the activity of a compound to reduce tumor growth through inhibition of endotheliase, the procedures described by Jankun et al., *Canc. Res.*, 57:559-563 (1997) to evaluate PAI-1 can be employed. Briefly, the ATCC cell lines DU145 and LnCaP are injected into SCID mice. After tumors are established, the mice are given test compound according to a dosing regime  
20 determined from the compound's *in vitro* characteristics. The Jankun et al. compound was administered in water. Tumor volume measurements are taken twice a week for about five weeks. A compound is deemed active if an animal to which the compound was administered exhibited decreased tumor volume, as compared to animals receiving appropriate control compounds.

- 25      Another *in vivo* experimental model designed to evaluate the effect of p-aminobenzamidine, a swine protease inhibitor, on reducing tumor volume is described by Billström et al., *Int. J. Cancer*, 61:542-547 (1995).

To evaluate the ability of a compound to reduce the occurrence of, or inhibit, metastasis, the procedures described by Kobayashi et al., *Int. J. Canc.*,

- 30      57:727-733d (1994) can be employed. Briefly, a murein xenograft selected for high lung colonization potential is injected into C57B1/6 mice i.v. (experimental metastasis) or s.c. into the abdominal wall (spontaneous metastasis). Various

-51-

concentrations of the compound to be tested can be admixed with the tumor cells in Matrigel prior to injection. Daily i.p. injections of the test compound are made either on days 1-6 or days 7-13 after tumor inoculation. The animals are sacrificed about three or four weeks after tumor inoculation, and the lung tumor colonies are counted. Evaluation of the resulting data permits a determination as to efficacy of the test compound, optimal dosing and route of administration.

The activity of the tested compounds toward decreasing tumor volume and metastasis can be evaluated in model described in Rabbani et al., *Int. J. Cancer* 63:840-845 (1995) to evaluate their inhibitor. There, Mat LyLu tumor cells were injected into the flank of Copenhagen rats. The animals were implanted with osmotic minipumps to continuously administer various doses of test compound for up to three weeks. The tumor mass and volume of experimental and control animals were evaluated during the experiment, as were metastatic growths. Evaluation of the resulting data permits a determination as to efficacy of the test compound, optimal dosing, and route of administration. Some of these authors described a related protocol in Xing et al., *Canc. Res.*, 57:3585-3593 (1997).

To evaluate the inhibitory activity of a compound toward neovascularization, a rabbit cornea neovascularization model can be employed. Avery et al., *Arch. Ophthalmol.*, 108:1474-1475 (1990) describe anesthetizing New Zealand albino rabbits and then making a central corneal incision and forming a radial corneal pocket. A slow release prostaglandin pellet was placed in the pocket to induce neovascularization. Test compound was administered i.p. for five days, at which time the animals were sacrificed. The effect of the test compound is evaluated by review of periodic photographs taken of the limbus, which can be used to calculate the area of neovascular response and, therefore, limbal neovascularization. A decreased area of neovascularization as compared with appropriate controls indicates the test compound was effective at decreasing or inhibiting neovascularization.

As angiogenesis model used to evaluate the effect of a test compound in preventing angiogenesis is described by Min et al., *Canc. Res.*, 56:2428-2433 (1996). C57BL6 mice receive subcutaneous injections of a Matrigel mixture

-52-

containing bFGF, as the angiogenesis-inducing agent, with and without the test compound. After five days, the animals are sacrificed and the Matrigel plugs, in which neovascularization can be visualized, are photographed. An experimental animal receiving Matrigel and an effective dose of test compound will exhibit

- 5 less vascularization than a control animal or an experimental animal receiving a less- or non-effective does of compound.

An *in vivo* system designed to test compound for their ability to limit the spread of primary tumors is described by Crowley et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 90:5021-5025 (1993). Nude mice are injected with tumor cells (PC3)

- 10 engineered to express CAT (chloramphenicol acetyltransferase). Compounds to be tested for their ability to decrease tumor size and/or metastases are administered to the animals, and subsequent measurements of tumor size and/or metastatic growths are made. In addition, the level of CAT detected in various organs provides an indication of the ability of the test compound to inhibit  
15 metastasis; detection of less CAT in tissues of a treated animal versus a control animal indicates less CAT-expressing cells migrated to that tissue.

*In vivo* experimental modes designed to evaluate the inhibitory potential of a test serine protease inhibitors, using a tumor cell line F3II, the to be highly invasive, are described by Alonso et al., *Breast Canc. Res. Treat.*, 40:209-223

- 20 (1996). This group describes *in vivo* studies for toxicity determination, tumor growth, invasiveness, spontaneous metastasis, experimental lung metastasis, and an angiogenesis assay.

The CAM model (chick embryo chorioallantoic membrane model), first described by L. Ossowski in 1998 (*J. Cell Biol.*, 107:2437-2445 (1988)),

- 25 provides another method for evaluating the urokinase inhibitory activity of a test compound. In the CAM model, tumor cells invade through the chorioallantoic membrane containing CAM with tumor cells in the presence of several serine protease inhibitors results in less or no invasion of the tumor cells through the membrane. Thus, the CAM assay is performed with CAM and tumor cells in the  
30 presence and absence of various concentrations of test compound. The invasiveness of tumor cells is measured under such conditions to provide an

-53-

indication of the compound's inhibitory activity. A compound having inhibitory activity correlates with less tumor invasion.

- The CAM model is also used in a standard assay of angiogenesis (*i.e.*, effect on formation of new blood vessels (Brooks et al., *Methods in Molecular Biology*, 129:257-269 (1999)). According to this model, a filter disc containing an angiogenesis inducer, such as basic fibroblast growth factor (bFGF) is placed onto the CAM. Diffusion of the cytokine into the CAM induces local angiogenesis, which may be measured in several ways such as by counting the number of blood vessel branch points within the CAM directly below the filter disc. The ability of identified compounds to inhibit cytokine-induced angiogenesis can be tested using this model. A test compound can either be added to the filter disc that contains the angiogenesis inducer, be placed directly on the membrane or be administered systemically. The extent of new blood vessel formation in the presence and/or absence of test compound can be compared using this model. The formation of fewer new blood vessels in the presence of a test compound would be indicative of anti-angiogenesis activity. Anti-angiogenesis activity for inhibitors of endotheliase would suggest that endotheliase plays a significant role in angiogenesis.

b. Known serine protease inhibitors

- Compounds for screening can be serine protease inhibitors, which can be tested for their ability to inhibit the activity of the endotheliase protein at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a DNA having a nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1.

- Exemplary, but not limiting serine proteases, are the following known serine protease inhibitors are used in the screening assays: Serine Protease Inhibitor 3 (SPI-3) (Chen, M.C., et al., *Citokine*, 11(11):856-862 (1999)); Aprotinin (Iijima, R., et al., *J. Biochem. (Tokyo)*, 126(5):912-916 (1999)); Kazal-type serine protease inhibitor-like proteins (Niimi, T., et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 266(1):282-292 (1999)); Kunitz-type serine protease inhibitor (Ravichandran, S., et al., *Acta Crystallogr. D. Biol. Crystallogr.*, 55(11):1814-1821 (1999)); Tissue factor pathway inhibitor-2/Matrix-associated serine protease inhibitor (TFPI-2/MSPI), (Liu, Y., et al., *Arch. Biochem. Biophys.*, 370(1):112-8 (1999));

-54-

- Bukunin, (Cui, C.Y., et al., *J. Invest. Dermatol.*, 113(2):182-8 (1999));  
Nafmostat mesilate (Ryo, R., et al., *Vox Sang.*, 76(4):241-6 (1999)); TPCK  
(Huang, Y., et al., *Oncogene*, 18(23):3431-9 (1999)); A synthetic cotton-bound  
serine protease inhibitor (Edwards, J.V., et al., *Wound Repair Regen.*, 7(2):106-  
5 18 (1999)); FUT-175 (Sawada, M., et al., *Stroke*, 30(3):644-50 (1999));  
Combination of serine protease inhibitor FUT-0175 and thromboxane synthetase  
inhibitor OKY-046 (Kaminogo, M., et al., *Neurol. Med. Chir. (Tokyo)*,  
38(11):704-8; discussion 708-9 (1998)); The rat serine protease inhibitor 2.1  
gene (LeCam, A., et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 253(2):311-4  
10 (1998)); A new intracellular serine protease inhibitor expressed in the rat  
pituitary gland complexes with granzyme B (Hill, R.M., et al., *FEBS Lett.*,  
440(3):361-4 (1998)); 3,4-Dichloroisocoumarin (Hammed, A., et al., *Proc. Soc.  
Exp. Biol. Med.*, 219(2):132-7 (1998)); LEX032 (Bains, A.S., et al., *Eur. J.  
Pharmacol.*, 356(1):67-72 (1998)); N-tosyl-L-phenylalanine chloromethyl ketone  
15 (Dryjanski, M., et al., *Biochemistry*, 37(40):14151-6 (1998)); Mouse gene for  
the serine protease inhibitor neuroserpin (P112) (Berger, P., et al., *Gene*, 214(1-  
2):25-33 (1998)); Rat serine protease inhibitor 2.3 gene (Paul, C., et al., *Eur. J.  
Biochem.*, 254(3):538-46 (1998)); Ecotin (Yang, S.Q., et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*,  
279(4):945-57 (1998)); A 14 kDa plant-related serine protease inhibitor (Roch,  
20 P., et al., *Dev. Comp. Immunol.*, 22(1):1-12 (1998)); Matrix-associated serine  
protease inhibitor TFPI-2/33 kDa MSPI (Rao, C.N., et al., *Int. J. Cancer*,  
76(5):749-56 (1998)); ONO-3403 (Hiwasa, T., et al., *Cancer Lett.*, 126(2):221-  
5 (1998)); Bdellastasin (Moser, M., et al., *Eur. J. Biochem.*, 253(1):212-20  
(1998)); Bikunin (Xu, Y., et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 276(5):955-66 (1998));  
25 Nafamostat mesilate (Mellgren, K., et al., *Thromb. Haemost.*, 79(2):342-7  
(1998)); The growth hormone dependent serine protease inhibitor, Spi 2.1  
(Maake, C., et al., *Endocrinology*, 138(12):5630-6 (1997)); Growth factor  
activator inhibitor type 2, a Kunitz-type serine protease inhibitor (Kawaguchi, T.,  
et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272(44):27558-64 (1997)); Heat-stable serine protease  
30 inhibitor protein from ovaries of the desert locust, Schistocerca gregaria  
(Hamdaoui, A., et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 238(2):357-60  
(1997)); Bikunin, (Delaria, K.A., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 272(18):12209-14

-55-

haloalkoxy, preferably halide, more preferably I; n is an integer from 0 to 5, preferably 1 to 5, more preferably 1 or 5, most preferably 1; and p is 0; or

- (ii) n and p are 1, and R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together form, with the carbon to which each is attached, an aryl, aromatic ring, heteroaromatic ring, carbocyclic or heterocyclic ring, which is saturated or unsaturated, containing from about 3 to about 16 members, preferably 3 to about 10 members, more preferably 5 to 7 members; in particular, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together form -CH=CH-CH=CH-, -N=CH-CH=CH-, -CH=N-CH=CH-, -CH=CH-O-, -CH=CH-S-, or -CH=CH-N(R<sup>20</sup>)-, where R<sup>20</sup> is alkyl, aryl or aralkyl.

In particularly preferred embodiments, R<sup>1</sup> is Cl, Br, or I, preferably I, and is ortho to the oxygen substituent; m is 2; R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, n and p are

selected from (i) or (ii) as follows:

- (i) R<sup>2</sup> is selected from I, Br, CH<sub>3</sub>, C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, Ph, OCH<sub>3</sub>, CF<sub>3</sub>, OCF<sub>3</sub>, F, NO<sub>2</sub>, CN, Cl, C(O)Ph, SCF<sub>3</sub> or 2-fluorophenoxy; n is 1, 2 or 5; and p is 0; or
- (ii) n and p are 1; and R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together form -CH=CH-CH=CH- or -C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>-C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-.

In other preferred embodiments, the compounds are of formula (VI) where R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, a, n and p are as defined above; m is an integer from 0 to 4, preferably 2; and R<sup>1</sup> is alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, heteroaryl, aralkyl or heteroaralkyl, preferably alkenyl, aryl or heteroaryl, more preferably

- alkenyl or aryl; and is unsubstituted or substituted with one or more substituents selected from alkyl, alkenyl, alkynyl, aryl, cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, hydroxy, S(O)<sub>n</sub>R<sup>17</sup>, NR<sup>17</sup>R<sup>18</sup>, COOR<sup>17</sup>, COR<sup>17</sup>, CONR<sup>17</sup>R<sup>18</sup>, alkoxy, aryloxy, heteroaryl, heterocyclyl, heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, arylalkyl, aralkenyl, arylkynyl, heteroaralkyl, heteroaralkenyl,

- Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 90(4):1526-30 (1993)); Antistasin (Holstein, T.W., et al., *FEBS Lett.*, 309(3):288-92 (1992)); The vaccinia virus K2L gene encodes a serine protease inhibitor (Zhou, J., et al., *Virology*, 189(2):678-86 (1992)); Bowman-Birk serine-protease inhibitor (Werner, M.H., et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 225(3):873-89 (1992); FUT-175 (Yanamoto, H., et al., *Neurosurgery*, 30(3):358-63 (1992)); FUT-175; (Yanamoto, H., et al., *Neurosurgery*, 30(3):351-6, discussion 356-7 (1992)); PAI-1 (Yreadwell, B.V., et al., *J. Orthop. Res.*, 9(3):309-16 (1991)); 3,4-Dichloroisocoumarin (Rusbridge, N.M., et al., *FEBS Lett.*, 268(1):133-6 (1990)); Alpha 1-antichymotrypsin (Lindmark, B.E., et al., *Am. Rev. Respir. Dis.*, 141(4 Pt 1):884-8 (1990)); P-toluenesulfonyl-L-arginine methyl ester (TAME) (Scuderi, P., *J. Immunol.*, 143(1):168-73 (1989)); Aprotinin (Seto, S., et al., *Adv. Exp. Med. Biol.*, 247B:49-54 (1989)); Alpha 1-antichymotrypsin (Abraham, C.R., et al., *Cell*, 52(4):487-501 (1988)); Contrapsin (Modha, J., et al., *Parasitology*, 96 (Pt 1):99-109 (1988)); (FOY-305) (Yamauchi, Y., et al., *Hiroshima J. Med. Sci.*, 36(1):81-7 No abstract available (1987)); Alpha 2-antiplasmin (Holmes, W.E., et al., *J. Biol. Chem.*, 262(4):1659-64 (1987)); 3,4-dichloroisocoumarin (Harper, J.W., et al., *Biochemistry*, 24(8):1831-41 (1985)); Diisopropylfluorophosphate (Tsutsui, K., et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 123(1):271-7 (1984)); Gabexate mesilate (Hesse, B., et al., *Pharmacol. Res. Commun.*, 16(7):637-45 (1984)); Phenyl methyl sulfonyl fluoride (Dufer, J., et al., *Scand. J. Haematol.*, 32(1):25-32 (1984)); Aprotinin (Seto, S., et al., *Hypertension*, 5(6):893-9 (1983)); Protease inhibitor CI-2 (McPhalen, C.A., et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 168(2):445-7 (1983)); Phenylmethylsulfonyl fluoride (Sekar V., et al., *Biochem. Biophys. Res. Commun.*, 89(2):474-8 (1979)); PGE1 (Feinstein, M.D., et al., *Prostaglandine*, 14(6):1075-93 (1977))

c. Combinatorial libraries and other libraries

- The source of compounds for the screening assays, can be libraries, including, but are not limited to, combinatorial libraries. Methods for synthesizing combinatorial libraries and characteristics of such combinatorial libraries are known in the art (See generally, *Combinatorial Libraries: Synthesis, Screening and Application Potential* (Cortese Ed.) Walter de Gruyter, Inc., 1995;

-57-

Tietze and Lieb, *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 2(3):363-71 (1998); Lam, *Anticancer Drug Des.*, 12(3):145-67 (1997); Blaney and Martin, *Curr. Opin. Chem. Biol.*, 1(1):54-9 (1997); and Schultz and Schultz, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 12(6):729-43 (1996)).

- 5        Methods and strategies for generating diverse libraries, primarily peptide- and nucleotide-based oligomer libraries, have been developed using molecular biology methods and/or simultaneous chemical synthesis methodologies (see, e.g., Dower et al., *Annu. Rep. Med. Chem.*, 26:271-280 (1991); Fodor et al., *Science*, 251:767-773 (1991); Jung et al., *Angew. Chem. Ind. Ed. Engl.*, 31:367-383 (1992); Zuckerman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 89:4505-4509 (1992); Scott et al., *Science*, 249:386-390 (1990); Devlin et al., *Science*, 249:404-406 (1990); Cwirla et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 87:6378-6382 (1990); and Gallop et al., *J. Medicinal Chemistry*, 37:1233-1251 (1994)). The resulting combinatorial libraries potentially contain millions of compounds and  
10      15     that can be screened to identify compounds that exhibit a selected activity.

The libraries fall into roughly three categories: fusion-protein-displayed peptide libraries in which random peptides or proteins are presented on the surface of phage particles or proteins expressed from plasmids; support-bound synthetic chemical libraries in which individual compounds or mixtures of  
20      25     compounds are presented on insoluble matrices, such as resin beads (see, e.g., Lam et al., *Nature*, 354:82-84 (1991)) and cotton supports (see, e.g., Eichler et al., *Biochemistry* 32:11035-11041 (1993)); and methods in which the compounds are used in solution (see, e.g., Houghten et al., *Nature*, 354:84-86 (1991); Houghten et al., *BioTechniques*, 13:412-421 (1992); and Scott et al., *Curr. Opin. Biotechnol.*, 5:40-48 (1994)). There are numerous examples of synthetic peptide and oligonucleotide combinatorial libraries and there are many methods for producing libraries that contain non-peptidic small organic molecules. Such libraries can be based on basis set of monomers that are combined to form mixtures of diverse organic molecules or that can be combined to form a  
30      35     library based upon a selected pharmacophore monomer.

Either a random or a deterministic combinatorial library can be screened by the presently disclosed and/or claimed screening methods. In either of these

- two libraries, each unit of the library is isolated and/or immobilized on a solid support. In the deterministic library, one knows *a priori* a particular unit's location on each solid support. In a random library, the location of a particular unit is not known *a priori* although each site still contains a single unique unit.
- 5 Many methods for preparing libraries are known to those of skill in this art (see, e.g., Geysen et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:3998-4002 (1984), Houghten et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA*, 81:5131-5135 (1985)). Combinatorial library generated by the any techniques known to those of skill in the art are contemplated (see, e.g., Table 1 of Schultz and Schultz,
- 10 10 *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 12(6):729-43 (1996)) for screening; Bartel et al., *Science*, 261:1411-1418 (1993); Baumbach et al. *BioPharm*, (May):24-35 (1992); Bock et al. *Nature*, 355:564-566 (1992); Borman, S., Combinatorial chemists focus on small molecules molecular recognition, and automation, *Chem. Eng. News*, 2(12):29 (1996); Boulik, et al., Eukaryotic Virus Display: Engineering the Major
- 15 15 Surface Glycoproteins of the *Autographa California Nuclear Polyhedrosis Virus* (ACNPV) for the Presentation of Foreign Proteins on the Virus Surface, *Bio/Technology*, 13:1079-1084 (1995); Brenner, et al., Encoded Combinatorial Chemistry, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 89:5381-5383 (1992); Caflisch, et al., Computational Combinatorial Chemistry for *De Novo* Ligand Design: Review and
- 20 20 Assessment, *Perspect. Drug Discovery Des.*, 3:51-84 (1995); Cheng, et al., Sequence-Selective Peptide Binding with a Peptido-A,B-trans-steroidal Receptor Selected from an Encoded Combinatorial Library, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 118:1813-1814 (1996); Chu, et al., Affinity Capillary Electrophoresis to Identify the Peptide in A Peptide Library that Binds Most Tightly to Vancomycin, *J. Org.*
- 25 25 *Chem.*, 58:648-652 (1993); Clackson, et al., Making Antibody Fragments Using Phage Display Libraries, *Nature*, 352:624-628 (1991); Combs, et al., Protein Structure-Based Combinatorial Chemistry: Discovery of Non-Peptide Binding Elements to Src SH3 Domain, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 118:287-288 (1996); Cwirla, et al., Peptides On Phage: A Vast Library of Peptides for Identifying Ligands,
- 30 30 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 87:6378-6382 (1990); Ecker, et al., Combinatorial Drug Discovery: Which Method will Produce the Greatest Value?, *Bio/Technology*, 13:351-360 (1995); Ellington, et al., *In Vitro* Selection of RNA

- Molecules That Bind Specific Ligands, *Nature*, 346:818-822 (1990); Ellman, J.A., Variants of Benzodiazepines, *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 114:10997 (1992); Erickson, et al., *The Proteins*; Neurath, H., Hill, R.L., Eds.: Academic: New York, 1976; pp. 255-257; Felici, et al., *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:301-310 (1991); Fodor, et al., Light-Directed, Spatially Addressable Parallel Chemical Synthesis, *Science*, 251:767-773 (1991); Francisco, et al., Transport and Anchoring of Beta-Lactamase to the External Surface of *E. Coli*, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 89:2713-2717 (1992); Georgiou, et al., Practical Applications of Engineering Gram-Negative Bacterial Cell Surfaces, *TIBTECH*, 11:6-10 (1993); Geysen, et al.,
- 5 Use of peptide synthesis to probe viral antigens for epitopes to a resolution of a single amino acid, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 81:3998-4002 (1984); Glaser, et al., Antibody Engineering by Condon-Based Mutagenesis in a Filamentous Phage Vector System, *J. Immunol.*, 149:3903-3913 (1992); Gram, et al., In vitro selection and affinity maturation of antibodies from a naive combinatorial
- 10 immunoglobulin library, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci.*, 89:3576-3580 (1992); Han, et al., Liquid-Phase Combinatorial Synthesis, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 92:6419-6423 (1995); Hoogenboom, et al., Multi-Subunit Proteins on the Surface of Filamentous Phage: Methodologies for Displaying Antibody (Fab) Heavy and Light Chains, *Nucleic Acids Res.*, 19:4133-4137 (1991); Houghten,
- 15 et al., General Method for the Rapid Solid-Phase Synthesis of Large Numbers of Peptides: Specificity of Antigen-Antibody Interaction at the Level of Individual Amino Acids, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 82:5131-5135 (1985); Houghten, et al., The Use of Synthetic Peptide Combinatorial Libraries for the Determination of Peptide Ligands in Radio-Receptor Assays-Opiod-Peptides, *Bioorg. Med.*
- 20
- 25 *Chem. Lett.*, 3:405-412 (1993); Houghten, et al., Generation and Use of Synthetic Peptide Combinatorial Libraries for Basic Research and Drug Discovery, *Nature*, 354:84-86 (1991); Huang, et al., Discovery of New Ligand Binding Pathways in Myoglobin by Random Mutagenesis, *Nature Struct. Biol.*, 1:226-229 (1994); Huse, et al., Generation of a Large Combinatorial Library of the
- 30 Immunoglobulin Repertoire In Phage Lambda, *Science*, 246:1275-1281 (1989); Janda, K.D., New Strategies for the Design of Catalytic Antibodies, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 6:178-181 (1990); Jung, et al., Multiple Peptide Synthesis Methods and

-60-

- Their Applications, *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.*, 31:367-486 (1992); Kang, et al., Linkage of Recognition and Replication Functions By Assembling Combinatorial Antibody Fab Libraries Along Phage Surfaces, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 88:4363-4366 (1991a); Kang, et al., Antibody Redesign by Chain Shuffling from Random Combinatorial Immunoglobulin Libraries, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 88:11120-11123 (1991b); Kay, et al., An M13 Phage Library Displaying Random 38-Amino-Acid-Peptides as a Source of Novel Sequences with Affinity to Selected Targets Genes, *Gene*, 128:59-65 (1993); Lam, et al., A new type of synthetic peptide library for identifying ligand-binding activity,
- 5 5 10 15 20 25 30
- 10 *Nature*, 354:82-84 (1991) (published errata appear in *Nature*, 358:434 (1992) and *Nature*, 360:768 (1992); Lebl, et al., One Bead One Structure Combinatorial Libraries, *Biopolymers (Pept. Sci.)*, 37:177-198 (1995); Lerner, et al., Antibodies without Immunization, *Science*, 258:1313-1314 (1992); Li, et al., Minimization of a Polypeptide Hormone, *Science*, 270:1657-1660 (1995); Light, et al.,
- 15 Display of Dimeric Bacterial Alkaline Phosphatase on the Major Coat Protein of Filamentous Bacteriophage, *Bioorg. Med. Chem. Lett.*, 3:1073-1079 (1992); Little, et al., Bacterial Surface Presentation of Proteins and Peptides: An Alternative to Phage Technology?, *Trends Biotechnol.*, 11:3-5 (1993); Marks, et al., By-Passing Immunization. Human Antibodies from V-Gene Libraries
- 20 Displayed on Phage, *J. Mol. Biol.*, 222:581-597 (1991); Matthews, et al., Substrate Phage: Selection of Protease Substrates by Monovalent Phage Display, *Science*, 260:1113-1117 (1993); McCafferty, et al., Phage Enzymes: Expression and Affinity Chromatography of Functional Alkaline Phosphatase on the Surface of Bacteriophage, *Protein Eng.*, 4:955-961 (1991); Menger, et al., Phosphatase Catalysis Developed Via Combinatorial Organic Chemistry, *J. Org. Chem.*, 60:6666-6667 (1995); Nicolaou, et al., *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.*, 34:2289-2291 (1995); Oldenburg, et al., Peptide Ligands for A Sugar-Binding Protein Isolated from a Random Peptide Library, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 89:5393-5397 (1992); Parmley, et al., Antibody-Selectable Filamentous fd Phage Vectors:
- 25 30
- Affinity Purification of Target Genes, *Genes*, 73:305-318 (1988); Pinilla, et al., Synthetic Peptide Combinatorial Libraries (SPCLS)-Identification of the Antigenic Determinant of Beta-Endorphin Recognized by Monoclonal Antibody-3E7, *Gene*,

-61-

- 128:71-76 (1993); Pinilla, et al., Review of the Utility of Soluble Combinatorial Libraries, *Biopolymers*, 37:221-240 (1995); Pistor, et al., Expression of Viral Hemagglutinin On the Surface of *E. Coli*, *Klin. Wochenschr.*, 66:110-116 (1989); Pollack, et al., Selective Chemical Catalysis by an Antibody, *Science*, 234:1570-1572 (1986); Rigler, et al., Fluorescence Correlations, Single Molecule Detection and Large Number Screening: Applications in Biotechnology, *J. Biotechnol.*, 41:177-186 (1995); Sarvetnick, et al., Increasing the Chemical Potential of the Germ-Line Antibody Repertoire, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 90:4008-4011 (1993); Sastry, et al., Cloning of the Immunological Repertoire in *Escherichia Coli* for Generation of Monoclonal Catalytic Antibodies: Construction of a Heavy Chain Variable Region-Specific cDNA Library, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 86:5728-5732 (1989); Scott, et al., Searching for Peptide Ligands with an Epitope Library, *Science*, 249:386-390 (1990); Sears, et al., Engineering Enzymes for Bioorganic Synthesis: Peptide Bond Formation, *Biotechnol. Prog.*, 12:423-433 (1996); Simon, et. al., Peptides: A Modular Approach to Drug Discovery, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 89:9367-9371 (1992); Still, et al., Discovery of Sequence-Selective Peptide Binding by Synthetic Receptors Using Encoded Combinatorial Libraries, *Acc. Chem. Res.*, 29:155-163 (1996); Thompson, et al., Synthesis and Applications of Small Molecule Libraries, *Chem. Rev.*, 96:555-600 (1996); Tramontano, et al., Catalytic Antibodies, *Science*, 234:1566-1570 (1986); Wrighton, et al., Small Peptides as Potent Mimetics of the Protein Hormone Erythropoietin, *Science*, 273:458-464 (1996); York, et al., Combinatorial mutagenesis of the reactive site region in plasminogen activator inhibitor I, *J. Biol. Chem.*, 266:8595-8600 (1991); Zebedee, et al., Human 25 Combinatorial Antibody Libraries to Hepatitis B Surface Antigen, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 89:3175-3179 (1992); Zuckerman, et al., Identification of Highest-Affinity Ligands by Affinity Selection from Equimolar Peptide Mixtures Generated by Robotic Synthesis, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 89:4505-4509 (1992).
- 20 30 For example, peptides that bind to an endotheliase or a protease domain of an endotheliase can be identified using phage display libraries. In an exemplary embodiment, this method can include a) contacting phage from a

-62-

phage library with the endotheliase protein or a protease domain thereof; (b) isolating phage that bind to the protein; and (c) determining the identity of at least one peptide coded by the isolated phage to identify a peptide that binds to an endotheliase.

**5 E. Modulators of the activity of endotheliases**

Provided herein are compounds, identified by screening or produced using the endotheliases or protease domain in other screening methods, that modulate the activity of an endotheliase. These compounds act by directly interacting with the endotheliase or by altering transcription or translation thereof. Such

10 molecules include, but are not limited to, antibodies that specifically react with an endotheliase, particularly with the protease domain thereof, antisense nucleic acids that alter expression of the endotheliase, antibodies, peptide mimetics and other such compounds.

**1. Antibodies**

15 Provided herein are antibodies that specifically bind to an endotheliase, preferably to the protease domain of the endotheliase protein. Preferably, the antibody is a monoclonal antibody, and preferably, the antibody immuno-specifically binds to the protease domain of the endotheliase protein. In particular embodiments, antibodies to the protease domain of endotheliase 1 are provided. Also provided are to endotheliase 2 and to the protease domain thereof

20 are also provided.

The endotheliase protein and domains, fragments, homologs and derivatives thereof may be used as immunogens to generate antibodies that specifically bind such immunogens. Such antibodies include but are not limited

25 to polyclonal, monoclonal, chimeric, single chain, Fab fragments, and an Fab expression library. In a specific embodiment, antibodies to human endotheliase are produced. In another embodiment, complexes formed from fragments of endotheliase, which fragments contain the serine protease domain, are used as immunogens for antibody production.

30 Various procedures known in the art may be used for the production of polyclonal antibodies to endotheliase protein, its domains, derivatives, fragments or analogs. For production of the antibody, various host animals can be

- immunized by injection with the native endotheliase protein or a synthetic version, or a derivative of the foregoing, such as a cross-linked endotheliase. Such host animals include but are not limited to rabbits, mice, rats, etc. Various adjuvants can be used to increase the immunological response, depending on the 5 host species, and include but are not limited to Freund's (complete and incomplete), mineral gels such as aluminum hydroxide, surface active substances such as lysolecithin, pluronic polyols, polyanions, peptides, oil emulsions, dinitrophenol, and potentially useful human adjuvants such as bacille Calmette-Guerin (BCG) and corynebacterium parvum.
- 10 For preparation of monoclonal antibodies directed towards an endotheliase or domains, derivatives, fragments or analogs thereof, any technique that provides for the production of antibody molecules by continuous cell lines in culture may be used. Such techniques include but are not restricted to the hybridoma technique originally developed by Kohler and Milstein (*Nature* 256:495-497 (1975)), the trioma technique, the human B-cell hybridoma technique (Kozbor et al., *Immunology Today* 4:72 (1983)), and the EBV hybridoma technique to produce human monoclonal antibodies (Cole et al., in *Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy*, Alan R. Liss, Inc., pp. 77-96 (1985)). In an additional embodiment, monoclonal antibodies can be produced in 15 20 germ-free animals utilizing recent technology (PCT/US90/02545). Human antibodies may be used and can be obtained by using human hybridomas (Cote et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 80:2026-2030 (1983)). Or by transforming human B cells with EBV virus *in vitro* (Cole et al., in *Monoclonal Antibodies and Cancer Therapy*, Alan R. Liss, Inc., pp. 77-96 (1985)). Techniques developed 25 for the production of "chimeric antibodies" (Morrison et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 81:6851-6855 (1984); Neuberger et al., *Nature* 312:604-608 (1984); Takeda et al., *Nature* 314:452-454 (1985)) by splicing the genes from a mouse antibody molecule specific for the endotheliase protein together with genes from a human antibody molecule of appropriate biological activity can be used.
- 30 Techniques described for the production of single chain antibodies (U.S. patent 4,946,778) can be adapted to produce endotheliase-specific single chain antibodies. An additional embodiment uses the techniques described for the

-64-

construction of Fab expression libraries (Huse et al., *Science* 246:1275-1281 (1989)) to allow rapid and easy identification of monoclonal Fab fragments with the desired specificity for endotheliase or endoetheliase, or domains, derivatives, or analogs thereof. Non-human antibodies can be "humanized" by known 5 methods (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,225,539).

Antibody fragments that contain the idiotypes of endotheliase can be generated by techniques known in the art. For example, such fragments include but are not limited to: the F(ab')2 fragment which can be produced by pepsin digestion of the antibody molecule; the Fab' fragments that can be generated by 10 reducing the disulfide bridges of the F(ab')2 fragment, the Fab fragments that can be generated by treating the antibody molecular with papain and a reducing agent, and Fv fragments.

In the production of antibodies, screening for the desired antibody can be accomplished by techniques known in the art, e.g., ELISA (enzyme-linked 15 immunosorbent assay). To select antibodies specific to a particular domain of the endotheliase one may assay generated hybridomas for a product that binds to the fragment of the endotheliase that contains such a domain

The foregoing antibodies can be used in methods known in the art relating to the localization and/or quantitation of endotheliase proteins, e.g., for 20 imaging these proteins, measuring levels thereof in appropriate physiological samples, in diagnostic methods, etc.

In another embodiment, (see *infra*), anti-endotheliase antibodies, or fragments thereof, containing the binding domain are used as therapeutic agents.

## 2. Peptides and Peptide Mimetics

25 Provided herein are methods for identifying molecules that bind to and modulate the activity of endotheliases. Included among molecules that bind to endotheliases are peptides and peptide mimetics. Peptide mimetics are molecules or compounds that mimic the necessary molecular conformation of a ligand or polypeptide for specific binding to a target molecule such as, e.g., an 30 endotheliase. In an exemplary embodiment, the peptides or peptide mimetics bind to the protease domain of the endotheliase. Such peptides and peptide mimetics include those of antibodies that specifically bind an endotheliase and,

-65-

preferably, bind to the protease domain of an endotheliase. The peptides and peptide mimetics identified by methods provided herein can be agonists or antagonists of endotheliases.

- Such peptides and peptide mimetics are useful for diagnosing, treating,  
5 preventing, and screening for a disease or disorder associated with endotheliase activity in a mammal. In addition, the peptides and peptide mimetics are useful for identifying, isolating, and purifying molecules or compounds that modulate the activity of an endotheliase, or specifically bind to an endotheliase, preferably, the protease domain of an endotheliase. Low molecular weight  
10 peptides and peptide mimetics can have strong binding properties to a target molecule, *e.g.*, an endotheliase or, preferably, to the protease domain of an endotheliase.

- Peptides and peptide mimetics that bind to endotheliases as described herein can be administered to mammals, including humans, to modulate  
15 endotheliase activity. Thus, methods for therapeutic treatment and prevention of diseases or disorders associated with angiogenesis that comprise administering a peptide or peptide mimetic compound in an amount sufficient to modulate such activity are provided. Thus, also provided herein are methods for treating a subject having such a disease or disorder in which a peptide or peptide  
20 mimetic compound is administered to the subject in a therapeutically effective dose or amount.

- Compositions containing the peptides or peptide mimetics can be administered for prophylactic and/or therapeutic treatments. In therapeutic applications, compositions can be administered to a patient already suffering  
25 from a disease, as described above, in an amount sufficient to cure or at least partially arrest the symptoms of the disease and its complications. Amounts effective for this use will depend on the severity of the disease and the weight and general state of the patient.

- In prophylactic applications, compositions containing the peptides and  
30 peptide mimetics are administered to a patient susceptible to or otherwise at risk of a particular disease. Such an amount is defined to be a "prophylactically

-66-

effective dose". In this use, the precise amounts again depend on the patient's state of health and weight.

- Accordingly, the peptides and peptide mimetics that bind to an endotheliase can be used generating pharmaceutical compositions containing, as
- 5 an active ingredient, at least one of the peptides or peptide mimetics in association with a pharmaceutical carrier or diluent. The compounds can be administered, for example, by oral, pulmonary, parental (intramuscular, intraperitoneal, intravenous (IV) or subcutaneous injection), inhalation (via a fine powder formulation), transdermal, nasal, vaginal, rectal, or sublingual routes of
- 10 administration and can be formulated in dosage forms appropriate for each route of administration (see, e.g., International PCT application Nos. WO 93/25221 and WO 94/17784; and European Patent Application 613,683).

Peptides and peptide mimetics that bind to endotheliases are useful *in vitro* as unique tools for understanding the biological role of endotheliases,

15 including the evaluation of the many factors thought to influence, and be influenced by, the production of endotheliase. Such peptides and peptide mimetics are also useful in the development of other compounds that bind to and modulate the activity of an endotheliase, because such compounds provide important information on the relationship between structure and activity that

20 should facilitate such development.

The peptides and peptide mimetics are also useful as competitive binders in assays to screen for new endotheliases or endotheliase agonists. In such assay embodiments, the compounds can be used without modification or can be modified in a variety of ways; for example, by labeling, such as covalently or

25 non-covalently joining a moiety which directly or indirectly provides a detectable signal. In any of these assays, the materials thereto can be labeled either directly or indirectly. Possibilities for direct labeling include label groups such as: radiolabels such as <sup>125</sup>I enzymes (U.S. Pat. No. 3,645,090) such as peroxidase and alkaline phosphatase, and fluorescent labels (U.S. Pat. No. 3,940,475)

30 capable of monitoring the change in fluorescence intensity, wavelength shift, or fluorescence polarization. Possibilities for indirect labeling include biotinylation of one constituent followed by binding to avidin coupled to one of the above label

-67-

groups. The compounds may also include spacers or linkers in cases where the compounds are to be attached to a solid support.

Moreover, based on their ability to bind to an endotheliase, the peptides and peptide mimetics can be used as reagents for detecting endotheliases in

- 5 living cells, fixed cells, in biological fluids, in tissue homogenates, in purified, natural biological materials, etc. For example, by labelling such peptides and peptide mimetics, one can identify cells having endotheliases. In addition, based on their ability to bind an endotheliase, the peptides and peptide mimetics can be used in situ staining, FACS (fluorescence-activated cell sorting), Western blotting, ELISA, etc. In addition, based on their ability to bind to an endotheliase, the peptides and peptide mimetics can be used in purification of endotheliase polypeptides or in purifying cells expressing the endotheliase polypeptides, e.g., a polypeptide encoding the protease domain of an endotheliase.
- 10 15 The peptides and peptide mimetics can also be utilized as commercial reagents for various medical research and diagnostic uses.

The activity of the peptides and peptide mimetics can be evaluated either *in vitro* or *in vivo* in one of the numerous models described in McDonald (1992) *Am. J. of Pediatric Hematology/Oncology*, 14:8-21, which is incorporated herein

- 20 by reference.

**Peptide and peptide mimetic therapy**

Peptides and peptide mimetics that can bind to endotheliases or the protease domain of endotheliases and modulate the activity thereof, or have endotheliase activity, can be used for treatment of diseases and disorders

- 25 associated with angiogenesis. The peptides and peptide mimetics may be delivered, *in vivo* or *ex vivo*, to the cells of a subject in need of treatment. Further, peptides which have endotheliase activity can be delivered, *in vivo* or *ex vivo*, to cells which carry mutant or missing alleles encoding the endotheliase gene. Any of the techniques described herein or known to the skilled artisan can
- 30 be used for preparation and *in vivo* or *ex vivo* delivery of such peptides and peptide mimetics that are substantially free of other human proteins. For

-68-

example, the peptides can be readily prepared by expression in a microorganism or synthesis *in vitro*.

- The peptides or peptide mimetics can be introduced into cells, *in vivo* or *ex vivo*, by microinjection or by use of liposomes, for example. Alternatively, the
- 5    peptides or peptide mimetics may be taken up by cells, *in vivo* or *ex vivo*, actively or by diffusion. In addition, extracellular application of the peptide or peptide mimetic may be sufficient to effect treatment of a disease or disorder associated with angiogenesis. Other molecules, such as drugs or organic compounds, that: 1) bind to an endotheliase or protease domain thereof; or 2)
- 10   have a similar function or activity to an endotheliase or protease domain thereof, may be used in methods for treatment.

**Rational drug design**

- The goal of rational drug design is to produce structural analogs of biologically active polypeptides or peptides of interest or of small molecules or
- 15   peptide mimetics with which they interact (e.g., agonists, antagonists, inhibitors) in order to fashion drugs which are, e.g., more active or stable forms thereof; or which, e.g., enhance or interfere with the function of a polypeptide *in vivo* (e.g., an endotheliase). In one approach, one first determines the three-dimensional structure of a protein of interest (e.g., an endotheliase or polypeptide having a
- 20   protease domain) or, for example, of an endotheliase-ligand complex, by X-ray crystallography, by computer modeling or most typically, by a combination of approaches (see, e.g., Erickson *et al.* 1990). Also, useful information regarding the structure of a polypeptide may be gained by modeling based on the structure of homologous proteins. In addition, peptides can be analyzed by an alanine
- 25   scan. In this technique, an amino acid residue is replaced by Ala, and its effect on the peptide's activity is determined. Each of the amino acid residues of the peptide is analyzed in this manner to determine the important regions of the peptide.

- Also, a polypeptide or peptide that binds to an endotheliase or,
- 30   preferably, the protease domain of an endotheliase, can be selected by a functional assay, and then the crystal structure of this polypeptide or peptide can be determined. The polypeptide can be, for example, an antibody specific

-69-

- for an endotheliase or the protein domain of an endotheliase. This approach can yield a pharmacore upon which subsequent drug design can be based. Further, it is possible to bypass the crystallography altogether by generating anti-idiotypic polypeptides or peptides, (anti-ids) to a functional, pharmacologically active
- 5     polypeptide or peptide that binds to an endotheliase or protease domain of an endotheliase. As a mirror image of a mirror image, the binding site of the anti-ids is expected to be an analog of the original target molecule, e.g., an endotheliase or polypeptide having an endotheliase. The anti-id could then be used to identify and isolate peptides from banks of chemically or biologically
- 10    produced banks of peptides. Selected peptides would then act as the pharmacore.

Thus, one may design drugs which have, e.g., improved activity or stability or which act as modulators (e.g., inhibitors, agonists, antagonists, etc.) of endotheliase activity, and are useful in the methods of the present invention, particularly the methods for diagnosis, treatment, prevention, and screening of a disease or disorder associated with angiogenesis. By virtue of the availability of cloned endotheliase sequences, sufficient amounts of the endotheliase polypeptide may be made available to perform such analytical studies as X-ray crystallography. In addition, the knowledge of the amino acid sequence of an endotheliase or the protease domain thereof, e.g., the protease domain encoded by the amino acid sequence of SEQ ID NO: 2, can provide guidance on computer modeling techniques in place of, or in addition to, X-ray crystallography.

**Methods of identifying peptides and peptide mimetics that bind to endotheliases**

- 25    Peptides having a binding affinity to the endotheliase polypeptides provided herein (e.g., an endotheliase or a polypeptide having a protease domain of an endotheliase) can be readily identified, for example, by random peptide diversity generating systems coupled with an affinity enrichment process. Specifically, random peptide diversity generating systems include the "peptides
- 30    on plasmids" system (see, e.g., U.S. Patent Nos. 5,270,170 and 5,338,665); the "peptides on phage" system (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 6,121,238 and Cwirla,*et al.* (1990) *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 87:6378-6382); the

-70-

"polysome system;" the "encoded synthetic library (ESL)" system; and the "very large scale immobilized polymer synthesis" system (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 6,121,238; and Dower *et al.* (1991) *Ann. Rep. Med. Chem.* 26:271-280

- For example, using the procedures described above, random peptides can
- 5 generally be designed to have a defined number of amino acid residues in length (e.g., 12). To generate the collection of oligonucleotides encoding the random peptides, the codon motif (NNK)<sub>x</sub>, where N is nucleotide A, C, G, or T (equimolar; depending on the methodology employed, other nucleotides can be employed), K is G or T (equimolar), and x is an integer corresponding to the
  - 10 number of amino acids in the peptide (e.g., 12) can be used to specify any one of the 32 possible codons resulting from the NNK motif: 1 for each of 12 amino acids, 2 for each of 5 amino acids, 3 for each of 3 amino acids, and only one of the three stop codons. Thus, the NNK motif encodes all of the amino acids, encodes only one stop codon, and reduces codon bias.
  - 15 The random peptides can be presented, for example, either on the surface of a phage particle, as part of a fusion protein containing either the pIII or the pVIII coat protein of a phage fd derivative (peptides on phage) or as a fusion protein with the LacI peptide fusion protein bound to a plasmid (peptides on plasmids). The phage or plasmids, including the DNA encoding the peptides, can
  - 20 be identified and isolated by an affinity enrichment process using immobilized endotheliase polypeptide having a protease domain. The affinity enrichment process, sometimes called "panning," typically involves multiple rounds of incubating the phage, plasmids, or polysomes with the immobilized endotheliase polypeptide, collecting the phage, plasmids, or polysomes that bind to the
  - 25 endotheliase polypeptide (along with the accompanying DNA or mRNA), and producing more of the phage or plasmids (along with the accompanying LacI-peptide fusion protein) collected.

#### **Characteristics of peptides and peptide mimetics**

- Typically, the molecular weight of preferred peptides or peptide mimetics
- 30 is from about 250 to about 8,000 daltons. If the peptides are oligomerized, dimerized and/or derivatized with a hydrophilic polymer (e.g., to increase the affinity and/or activity of the compounds), the molecular weights of such

-71-

peptides can be substantially greater and can range anywhere from about 500 to about 120,000 daltons, more preferably from about 8,000 to about 80,000 daltons. Such peptides can comprise 9 or more amino acids wherein the amino acids are naturally occurring or synthetic (non-naturally occurring) amino acids.

- 5 One skilled in the art would know how to determine the affinity and molecular weight of the peptides and peptide mimetics suitable for therapeutic and/or diagnostic purposes (e.g., see Dower *et al.*, U.S. Patent No. 6,121,238).

The peptides may be covalently attached to one or more of a variety of hydrophilic polymers. Suitable hydrophilic polymers include, but are not limited

- 10 to, polyalkylethers as exemplified by polyethylene glycol and polypropylene glycol, polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid, polyoxyalkenes, polyvinylalcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, cellulose and cellulose derivatives, dextran and dextran derivatives, etc. When the peptide compounds are derivatized with such polymers, their solubility and circulation half-lives can be increased with little, if  
15 any, diminishment in their binding activity. The peptide compounds may be dimerized and each of the dimeric subunits can be covalently attached to a hydrophilic polymer. The peptide compounds can be PEGylated, i.e., covalently attached to polyethylene glycol (PEG).

- Peptide analogs are commonly used in the pharmaceutical industry as  
20 non-peptide drugs with properties analogous to those of the template peptide. These types of non-peptide compounds are termed "peptide mimetics" or "peptidomimetics" (Luthman *et al.*, *A Textbook of Drug Design and Development*, 14:386-406, 2nd Ed., Harwood Academic Publishers (1996); Joachim Grante (1994) *Angew. Chem. Int. Ed. Engl.*, 33:1699-1720; Fauchere  
25 (1986) *J. Adv. Drug Res.*, 15:29; Veber and Freidinger (1985) *TINS*, p. 392; and Evans *et al.* (1987) *J. Med. Chem.* 30:1229). Peptide mimetics that are structurally similar to therapeutically useful peptides may be used to produce an equivalent or enhanced therapeutic or prophylactic effect. Preparation of peptidomimetics and structures thereof are known to those of skill in this art.  
30 Systematic substitution of one or more amino acids of a consensus sequence with a D-amino acid of the same type (e.g., D-lysine in place of L-lysine) may be used to generate more stable peptides. In addition, constrained

-72-

peptides containing a consensus sequence or a substantially identical consensus sequence variation may be generated by methods known in the art (Rizo *et al.* (1992) *Ann. Rev. Biochem.*, 61:387, incorporated herein by reference); for example, by adding internal cysteine residues capable of forming intramolecular  
5 disulfide bridges which cyclize the peptide.

Those skilled in the art would appreciate that modifications may be made to the peptides and mimetics without deleteriously effecting the biological or functional activity of the peptide. Further, the skilled artisan would know how to design non-peptide structures in three dimensional terms, that mimic the  
10 peptides that bind to a target molecule, *e.g.*, an endotheliase or, preferably, the protease domain of endotheliases (see, *e.g.*, Eck and Sprang (1989) *J. Biol. Chem.*, 26: 17605-18795).

When used for diagnostic purposes, the peptides and peptide mimetics may be labeled with a detectable label and, accordingly, the peptides and  
15 peptide mimetics without such a label can serve as intermediates in the preparation of labeled peptides and peptide mimetics. Detectable labels can be molecules or compounds, which when covalently attached to the peptides and peptide mimetics, permit detection of the peptide and peptide mimetics *in vivo*, for example, in a patient to whom the peptide or peptide mimetic has been  
20 administered, or *in vitro*, *e.g.*, in a sample or cells. Suitable detectable labels are well known in the art and include, by way of example, radioisotopes, fluorescent labels (*e.g.*, fluorescein), and the like. The particular detectable label employed is not critical and is selected relative to the amount of label to be employed as well as the toxicity of the label at the amount of label employed. Selection of  
25 the label relative to such factors is well within the skill of the art.

Covalent attachment of a detectable label to the peptide or peptide mimetic is accomplished by conventional methods well known in the art. For example, when the <sup>125</sup>I radioisotope is employed as the detectable label, covalent attachment of <sup>125</sup>I to the peptide or the peptide mimetic can be achieved by  
30 incorporating the amino acid tyrosine into the peptide or peptide mimetic and then iodinating the peptide (see, *e.g.*, Weaner *et al.* (1994) *Synthesis and Applications of Isotopically Labelled Compounds*, pp. 137-140). If tyrosine is

-73-

- not present in the peptide or peptide mimetic, incorporation of tyrosine to the N or C terminus of the peptide or peptide mimetic can be achieved by well known chemistry. Likewise, <sup>32</sup>P can be incorporated onto the peptide or peptide mimetic as a phosphate moiety through, for example, a hydroxyl group on the
- 5 peptide or peptide mimetic using conventional chemistry.

- Labeling of peptidomimetics usually involves covalent attachment of one or more labels, directly or through a spacer (e.g., an amide group), to non-interfering position(s) on the peptidomimetic that are predicted by quantitative structure-activity data and/or molecular modeling. Such
- 10 non-interfering positions generally are positions that do not form direct contacts with the macromolecules(s) to which the peptidomimetic binds to produce the therapeutic effect. Derivatization (e.g., labeling) of peptidomimetics should not substantially interfere with the desired biological or pharmacological activity of the peptidomimetic.

15 **Methods of preparing peptides and peptide mimetics**

- Peptides that bind to endotheliases can be prepared by classical methods known in the art, for example, by using standard solid phase techniques. The standard methods include exclusive solid phase synthesis, partial solid phase synthesis methods, fragment condensation, classical solution synthesis, and
- 20 even by recombinant DNA technology (see, e.g., Merrifield (1963) *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 85:2149, incorporated herein by reference.)

- Using the "encoded synthetic library" or "very large scale immobilized polymer synthesis" systems (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,925,525, and 5,902,723); one can not only determine the minimum size of a peptide with the
- 25 activity of interest, one can also make all of the peptides that form the group of peptides that differ from the preferred motif (or the minimum size of that motif) in one, two, or more residues. This collection of peptides can then be screened for ability to bind to the target molecule, e.g., and endotheliase or, preferably, the protease domain of an endotheliase. This immobilized polymer synthesis
- 30 system or other peptide synthesis methods can also be used to synthesize truncation analogs and deletion analogs and combinations of truncation and deletion analogs of the peptide compounds.

-74-

These procedures can also be used to synthesize peptides in which amino acids other than the 20 naturally occurring, genetically encoded amino acids are substituted at one, two, or more positions of the peptide. For instance, naphthylalanine can be substituted for tryptophan, facilitating synthesis. Other

- 5 synthetic amino acids that can be substituted into the peptides include L-hydroxypropyl, L-3, 4-dihydroxy-phenylalanyl, d amino acids such as L-d-hydroxylysyl and D-d-methylalanyl, L- $\alpha$ -methylalanyl,  $\beta$  amino acids, and isoquinolyl. D amino acids and non-naturally occurring synthetic amino acids can also be incorporated into the peptides (see, e.g., Roberts *et al.* (1983)

- 10 *Unusual Amino/Acids in Peptide Synthesis*, 5(6):341-449).

The peptides may also be modified by phosphorylation (see, e.g., W. Bannwarth *et al.* (1996) *Biorganic and Medicinal Chemistry Letters*, 6(17):2141-2146), and other methods for making peptide derivatives (see, e.g., Hruby *et al.* (1990) *Biochem. J.*, 268(2):249-262). Thus, peptide compounds

- 15 also serve as a basis to prepare peptide mimetics with similar biological activity.

Those of skill in the art recognize that a variety of techniques are available for constructing peptide mimetics with the same or similar desired biological activity as the corresponding peptide compound but with more favorable activity than the peptide with respect to solubility, stability, and

- 20 susceptibility to hydrolysis and proteolysis (see, e.g., Morgan *et al.* (1989) *Ann. Rep. Med. Chem.*, 24:243-252). Methods for preparing peptide mimetics modified at the N-terminal amino group, the C-terminal carboxyl group, and/or changing one or more of the amido linkages in the peptide to a non-amido linkage are known to those of skill in the art.

- 25 Amino terminus modifications include alkylating, acetylating, adding a carbobenzoyl group, forming a succinimide group, etc. (see, e.g., Murray *et al.* (1995) *Burger's Medicinal Chemistry and Drug Discovery*, 5th ed., Vol. 1, Manfred E. Wolf, ed., John Wiley and Sons, Inc.). C-terminal modifications include mimetics wherein the C-terminal carboxyl group is replaced by an ester,

- 30 an amide or modifications to form a cyclic peptide.

In addition to N-terminal and C-terminal modifications, the peptide compounds, including peptide mimetics, can advantageously be modified with or

-75-

covalently coupled to one or more of a variety of hydrophilic polymers. It has been found that when peptide compounds are derivatized with a hydrophilic polymer, their solubility and circulation half-lives may be increased and their immunogenicity is masked, with little, if any, diminishment in their binding

- 5 activity. Suitable nonproteinaceous polymers include, but are not limited to, polyalkylethers as exemplified by polyethylene glycol and polypropylene glycol, polylactic acid, polyglycolic acid, polyoxyalkenes, polyvinylalcohol, polyvinylpyrrolidone, cellulose and cellulose derivatives, dextran and dextran derivatives, etc. Generally, such hydrophilic polymers have an average
- 10 molecular weight ranging from about 500 to about 100,000 daltons, more preferably from about 2,000 to about 40,000 daltons and, even more preferably, from about 5,000 to about 20,000 daltons. The hydrophilic polymers also can have an average molecular weights of about 5,000 daltons, 10,000 daltons and 20,000 daltons.
- 15 Methods for derivatizing peptide compounds or for coupling peptides to such polymers have been described (see, e.g., Zalipsky (1995) *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 6:150-165; Monfardini *et al.* (1995) *Bioconjugate Chem.*, 6:62-69; U.S. Pat. No. 4,640,835; U.S. Pat. No. 4,496,689; U.S. Pat. No. 4,301,144; U.S. Pat. No. 4,670,417; U.S. Pat. No. 4,791,192; U.S. Pat. No. 4,179,337 and WO 20 95/34326, all of which are incorporated by reference in their entirety herein).

Other methods for making peptide derivatives are described, for example, in Hruby *et al.* (1990), *Biochem J.*, 268(2):249-262, which is incorporated herein by reference. Thus, the peptide compounds also serve as structural models for non-peptidic compounds with similar biological activity. Those of

- 25 skill in the art recognize that a variety of techniques are available for constructing compounds with the same or similar desired biological activity as a particular peptide compound but with more favorable activity with respect to solubility, stability, and susceptibility to hydrolysis and proteolysis (see, e.g., Morgan *et al.* (1989) *Ann. Rep. Med. Chem.*, 24:243-252, incorporated herein by reference). These techniques include replacing the peptide backbone with a backbone composed of phosphonates, amides, carbamates, sulfonamides, secondary amines, and N-methylamino acids.
- 30

-76-

Peptide compounds may exist in a cyclized form with an intramolecular disulfide bond between the thiol groups of the cysteines. Alternatively, an intermolecular disulfide bond between the thiol groups of the cysteines can be produced to yield a dimeric (or higher oligomeric) compound. One or more of the 5 cysteine residues may also be substituted with a homocysteine.

#### F. CONJUGATES

A conjugate, containing: a) a protease domain of an endotheliase protein encoded by a nucleic acid hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1; and b) a targeting agent linked to the 10 endotheliase directly or via a linker, wherein the agent facilitates: i) affinity isolation or purification of the conjugate; ii) attachment of the conjugate to a surface; iii) detection of the conjugate; or iv) targeted delivery to a selected tissue or cell, is provided herein.

The conjugate can be a chemical conjugate or a fusion protein mixture thereof  
15 The targeting agent is preferably a protein or peptide fragment, such as a tissue specific or tumor specific monoclonal antibody or growth factor or fragment thereof linked either directly or via a linker to an endotheliase or a protease domain thereof. The targeting agent may also be a protein or peptide fragment that contains a protein binding sequence, a nucleic acid binding 20 sequence, a lipid binding sequence, a polysaccharide binding sequence, or a metal binding sequence, or a linker for attachment to a solid support.

In a particular embodiment, the conjugate contains a) an endotheliase or protease domain of an endotheliase protein encoded by a nucleic acid hybridizes to a nucleic acid molecule having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the 25 SEQ. ID NO:1, 3, 5 or 22; and b) a targeting agent linked to the endotheliase directly or via a linker

Conjugates, such as fusion proteins and chemical conjugates, of the endotheliase with a protein or peptide fragment (or plurality thereof) that functions, for example, to facilitate affinity isolation or purification of the 30 endotheliase domain, attachment of the endotheliase domain to a surface, or detection of the endotheliase domain are provided. The conjugates can be produced by chemical conjugation, such as via thiol linkages, but are preferably

-77-

produced by recombinant means as fusion proteins. In the fusion protein, the peptide or fragment thereof is linked to either the N-terminus or C-terminus of the endotheliase domain. In chemical conjugates the peptide or fragment thereof may be linked anywhere that conjugation can be effected, and there may be a 5 plurality of such peptides or fragments linked to a single endotheliase domain or to a plurality thereof.

The targeting agent is preferably for *in vitro* delivery to a cell or tissue, and includes agents such as cell or tissue-specific antibodies, growth factors and other factors expressed on specific cells; and other cell or tissue specific agents 10 that promote directed delivery of a linked protein.

Most preferably the targeting agent specifically delivers the endotheliase to selected cells by interaction with a cell surface protein and internalization of conjugate or endotheliase portion thereof. These conjugates are used in a variety of methods and are particularly suited for use in methods of activation of 15 prodrugs, such as prodrugs that upon cleavage by the particular endotheliase are cytotoxic. The prodrugs are administered prior to simultaneously with or subsequently to the conjugate. Upon delivery to the targeted cells, the protease activates the prodrug, which then exhibits its therapeutic effect, such as a cytotoxic effect.

20        1.     **Conjugation**

Conjugates with linked endotheliase domains can be prepared either by chemical conjugation, recombinant DNA technology, or combinations of recombinant expression and chemical conjugation. The endotheliase domains and the targeting agent may be linked in any orientation and more than one 25 targeting agents and/or endotheliase domains may be present in a conjugate.

a.     **Fusion proteins**

Fusion proteins are proved herein. A fusion protein contains: a) one or a plurality of domains of an endotheliases and b) a targeting agent. The fusion proteins are preferably produced by recombinant expression of nucleic acids that 30 encode the fusion protein.

-78-

**b. Chemical conjugation**

- To effect chemical conjugation herein, the endotheliase domain is linked via one or more selected linkers or directly to the targeting agent. Chemical conjugation must be used if the targeted agent is other than a peptide or protein,
- 5 such a nucleic acid or a non-peptide drug. Any means known to those of skill in the art for chemically conjugating selected moieties may be used.

**2. Linkers**

- Linkers for two purposes are contemplated herein. The conjugates may include one or more linkers between the endotheliase portion and the targeting
- 10 agent. Additionally, linkers are used for facilitating or enhancing immobilization of an endotheliase or portion thereof on a solid support, such as a microtiter plate, silicon or silicon-coated chip, glass or plastic support, such as for high throughput solid phase screening protocols.

**a. Exemplary Linkers**

- 15 Any linker known to those of skill in the art for preparation of conjugates may be used herein. These linkers are typically used in the preparation of chemical conjugates; peptide linkers may be incorporated into fusion proteins.
- Linkers can be any moiety suitable to associate a domain of endotheliase and a targeting agent. Such linkers and linkages include, but are not limited to,
- 20 peptidic linkages, amino acid and peptide linkages, typically containing between one and about 60 amino acids, more generally between about 10 and 30 amino acids, chemical linkers, such as heterobifunctional cleavable cross-linkers, including but are not limited to, N-succinimidyl (4-iodoacetyl)-aminobenzoate, sulfosuccinimidyl (4-iodoacetyl)-aminobenzoate, 4-succinimidyl-oxy carbonyl-a-
- 25 (2-pyridyldithio)toluene, sulfosuccinimidyl-6-[a-methyl-a-(pyridyldithiol)-toluamido] hexanoate, N-succinimidyl-3-(2-pyridyldithio) - propionate, succinimidyl 6[3(-2-pyridyldithio)-propionamido] hexanoate, sulfosuccinimidyl 6[3(-2-pyridyldithio)-propionamido] hexanoate, 3-(2-pyridyldithio)-propionyl hydrazide, Ellman's reagent, dichlorotriazinic acid, and S-(2-thiopyridyl)-L-
- 30 cysteine. Other linkers include, but are not limited to peptides and other moieties that reduce stearic hindrance between the domain of endotheliase and the targeting agent, intracellular enzyme substrates, linkers that increase the

-79-

flexibility of the conjugate, linkers that increase the solubility of the conjugate, linkers that increase the serum stability of the conjugate, photocleavable linkers and acid cleavable linkers.

Other exemplary linkers and linkages that are suitable for chemically

- 5 linked conjugates include, but are not limited to, disulfide bonds, thioether bonds, hindered disulfide bonds, and covalent bonds between free reactive groups, such as amine and thiol groups. These bonds are produced using heterobifunctional reagents to produce reactive thiol groups on one or both of the polypeptides and then reacting the thiol groups on one polypeptide with
- 10 reactive thiol groups or amine groups to which reactive maleimido groups or thiol groups can be attached on the other. Other linkers include, acid cleavable linkers, such as bismaleimideethoxy propane, acid labile-transferrin conjugates and adipic acid dihydrazide, that would be cleaved in more acidic intracellular compartments; cross linkers that are cleaved upon exposure to UV or visible
- 15 light and linkers, such as the various domains, such as C<sub>H</sub>1, C<sub>H</sub>2, and C<sub>H</sub>3, from the constant region of human IgG, (see, Batra *et al. Molecular Immunol.*, 30:379-386 (1993)). In some embodiments, several linkers may be included in order to take advantage of desired properties of each linker.

Chemical linkers and peptide linkers may be inserted by covalently

- 20 coupling the linker to the domain of endotheliase and the targeting agent. The heterobifunctional agents, described below, may be used to effect such covalent coupling. Peptide linkers may also be linked by expressing DNA encoding the linker and TA, linker and targeted agent, or linker, targeted agent and TA as a fusion protein. Flexible linkers and linkers that increase solubility of the
- 25 conjugates are contemplated for use, either alone or with other linkers are also contemplated herein.

- 1) Acid cleavable, photocleavable and heat sensitive linkers

Acid cleavable linkers, photocleavable and heat sensitive linkers may also

- 30 be used, particularly where it may be necessary to cleave the domain of endotheliase to permit it to be more readily accessible to reaction. Acid cleavable linkers include, but are not limited to, bismaleimideethoxy propane;

-80-

and adipic acid dihydrazide linkers (see, e.g., Fattom *et al.* (1992) *Infection & Immun.* 60:584-589) and acid labile transferrin conjugates that contain a sufficient portion of transferrin to permit entry into the intracellular transferrin cycling pathway (see, e.g., Welhöner *et al.* (1991) *J. Biol. Chem.* 266:4309-4314).

Photocleavable linkers are linkers that are cleaved upon exposure to light (see, e.g., Goldmacher *et al.* (1992) *Bioconj. Chem.* 3:104-107, which linkers are herein incorporated by reference), thereby releasing the targeted agent upon exposure to light. Photocleavable linkers that are cleaved upon exposure to light  
5 are known (see, e.g., Hazum *et al.* (1981) in *Pept., Proc. Eur. Pept. Symp.*,  
10 16th, Brunfeldt, K (Ed), pp. 105-110, which describes the use of a nitrobenzyl group as a photocleavable protective group for cysteine; Yen *et al.* (1989)  
*Makromol. Chem.* 190:69-82, which describes water soluble photocleavable copolymers, including hydroxypropylmethacrylamide copolymer, glycine  
15 copolymer, fluorescein copolymer and methylrhodamine copolymer; Goldmacher *et al.* (1992) *Bioconj. Chem.* 3:104-107, which describes a cross-linker and reagent that undergoes photolytic degradation upon exposure to near UV light (350 nm); and Senter *et al.* (1985) *Photochem. Photobiol.* 42:231-237,  
which describes nitrobenzyloxycarbonyl chloride cross linking reagents that  
20 produce photocleavable linkages), thereby releasing the targeted agent upon exposure to light. Such linkers would have particular use in treating dermatological or ophthalmic conditions that can be exposed to light using fiber optics. After administration of the conjugate, the eye or skin or other body part can be exposed to light, resulting in release of the targeted moiety from the  
25 conjugate. Such photocleavable linkers are useful in connection with diagnostic protocols in which it is desirable to remove the targeting agent to permit rapid clearance from the body of the animal.

2) Other linkers for chemical conjugation

Other linkers, include trityl linkers, particularly, derivatized  
30 trityl groups to generate a genus of conjugates that provide for release of therapeutic agents at various degrees of acidity or alkalinity. The flexibility thus afforded by the ability to preselect the pH range at

-81-

which the therapeutic agent will be released allows selection of a linker based on the known physiological differences between tissues in need of delivery of a therapeutic agent (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 5,612,474). For example, the acidity of tumor tissues appears to be lower than that of normal tissues.

5           **3) Peptide linkers**

- The linker moieties can be peptides. Peptide linkers can be employed in fusion proteins and also in chemically linked conjugates. The peptide typically has from about 2 to about 60 amino acid residues, for example from about 5 to about 40, or from about 10 to about 30 amino acid residues. The length 10 selected will depend upon factors, such as the use for which the linker is included.

Peptide linkers are advantageous when the targeting agent is proteinaceous. For example, the linker moiety can be a flexible spacer amino acid sequence, such as those known in single-chain antibody research.

- 15 Examples of such known linker moieties include, but are not limited to, peptides, such as  $(\text{Gly}_m\text{Ser})_n$  and  $(\text{Ser}_m\text{Gly})_n$ , in which n is 1 to 6, preferably 1 to 4, more preferably 2 to 4, and m is 1 to 6, preferably 1 to 4, more preferably 2 to 4, enzyme cleavable linkers and others.

- Additional linking moieties are described, for example, in Huston *et al.*, 20 *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 85:5879-5883, 1988; Whitlow, M., *et al.*, *Protein Engineering* 6:989-995, 1993; Newton *et al.*, *Biochemistry* 35:545-553, 1996; A. J. Cumber *et al.*, *Bioconj. Chem.* 3:397-401, 1992; Ladurner *et al.*, *J. Mol. Biol.* 273:330-337, 1997; and U.S. Patent. No. 4,894,443. In some embodiments, several linkers may be included in order to take advantage of 25 desired properties of each linker.

**3. Targeting agents**

- Any agent that facilitates detection, immobilization, or purification of the conjugate is contemplated for use herein. For chemical conjugates any moiety that has such properties is contemplated; for fusion proteins, the targeting agent 30 is a protein, peptide or fragment thereof that sufficient to effects the targeting activity. Preferred targeting agents are those that deliver the endotheliase or portion thereof to selected cells and tissues. Such agents include tumor specific

-82-

monoclonal antibodies and portions thereof, growth factors, such as FGF, EGF, PDGF, VEGF, cytokines, including chemokines, and other such agents.

**4. Nucleic acids, plasmids and cells**

Isolated nucleic acid fragments encoding fusion proteins are provided.

- 5 The nucleic acid fragment that encodes the fusion protein includes: a) nucleic acid encoding a protease domain of an endotheliase protein encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1; and b) nucleic acid encoding a protein, peptide or effective fragment thereof that facilitates: i) affinity isolation or purification of the fusion 10 protein; ii) attachment of the fusion protein to a surface; or iii) detection of the fusion protein. Preferably, the nucleic acid is DNA..

Plasmids for replication and vectors for expression that contain the above nucleic acid fragments are also provided. Cells containing the plasmids and vectors are also provided. The cells can be any suitable host including, but are 15 not limited to, bacterial cells, yeast cells, fungal cells, plant cells, insect cell and animal cells. The nucleic acids, plasmids, and cells containing the plasmids can be prepared according to methods known in the art including any described herein.

- Also provided are methods for producing the above fusion proteins. An 20 exemplary method includes the steps of growing, i.e. culturing the cells so that the proliferate, cells containing a plasmid encoding the fusion protein under conditions whereby the fusion protein is expressed by the cell, and recovering the expressed fusion protein. Methods for expressing and recovering recombinant proteins are well known in the art (*See generally, Current Protocols* 25 *in Molecular Biology* (1998) § 16, John Wiley & Sons, Inc.) and such methods can be used for expressing and recovering the expressed fusion proteins. Preferably, the recombinant expression and recovery methods disclosed in Section B can be used.

- The recovered fusion proteins can be isolated or purified by methods 30 known in the art such as centrifugation, filtration, chromatograph, electrophoresis, immunoprecipitation, etc., or by a combination thereof (*See generally, Current Protocols in Molecular Biology* (1998) § 10, John Wiley &

-83-

Sons, Inc.). Preferably, the recovered fusion protein is isolated or purified through affinity binding between the protein or peptide fragment of the fusion protein and an affinity binding moiety. As discussed in the above sections regarding the construction of the fusion proteins, any affinity binding pairs can 5 be constructed and used in the isolation or purification of the fusion proteins. For example, the affinity binding pairs can be protein binding sequences/protein, DNA binding sequences/DNA sequences, RNA binding sequences/RNA sequences, lipid binding sequences/lipid, polysaccharide binding sequences/polysaccharide, or metal binding sequences/metal.

10       **6. Immobilization and supports or substrates therefor**

In certain embodiments, where the targeting agents are designed for linkage to surfaces, the endotheliase can be attached by linkage such as ionic or covalent, non-covalent or other chemical interaction, to a surface of a support or matrix material. Immobilization may be effected directly or via a linker. The 15 endotheliase may be immobilized on any suitable support, including, but are not limited to, silicon chips, and other supports described herein and known to those of skill in the art. A plurality of endotheliase or protease domains thereof may be attached to a support, such as an array (*i.e.*, a pattern of two or more) of conjugates on the surface of a silicon chip or other chip for use in high 20 throughput protocols and formats.

It is also noted that the domains of the endotheliase can be linked directly to the surface or via a linker without a targeting agent linked thereto. Hence chips containing arrays of the domains of the endotheliase.

The matrix material or solid supports contemplated herein are generally 25 any of the insoluble materials known to those of skill in the art to immobilize ligands and other molecules, and are those that used in many chemical syntheses and separations. Such supports are used, for example, in affinity chromatography, in the immobilization of biologically active materials, and during chemical syntheses of biomolecules, including proteins, amino acids and other 30 organic molecules and polymers. The preparation of and use of supports is well known to those of skill in this art; there are many such materials and preparations thereof known. For example, naturally-occurring support materials,

-84-

such as agarose and cellulose, may be isolated from their respective sources, and processed according to known protocols, and synthetic materials may be prepared in accord with known protocols.

- The supports are typically insoluble materials that are solid, porous,
- 5 deformable, or hard, and have any required structure and geometry, including, but not limited to: beads, pellets, disks, capillaries, hollow fibers, needles, solid fibers, random shapes, thin films and membranes. Thus, the item may be fabricated from the matrix material or combined with it, such as by coating all or part of the surface or impregnating particles.
- 10 Typically, when the matrix is particulate, the particles are at least about 10-2000  $\mu\text{M}$ , but may be smaller or larger, depending upon the selected application. Selection of the matrices will be governed, at least in part, by their physical and chemical properties, such as solubility, functional groups, mechanical stability, surface area swelling propensity, hydrophobic or hydrophilic
- 15 properties and intended use.

If necessary, the support matrix material can be treated to contain an appropriate reactive moiety. In some cases, the support matrix material already containing the reactive moiety may be obtained commercially. The support matrix material containing the reactive moiety may thereby serve as the matrix

20 support upon which molecules are linked. Materials containing reactive surface moieties such as amino silane linkages, hydroxyl linkages or carboxysilane linkages may be produced by well established surface chemistry techniques involving silanization reactions, or the like. Examples of these materials are those having surface silicon oxide moieties, covalently linked to gamma-amino-

25 propylsilane, and other organic moieties; N-[3-(triethyoxysilyl)propyl]phthalamic acid; and bis-(2-hydroxyethyl)aminopropyltriethoxysilane. Exemplary of readily available materials containing amino group reactive functionalities, include, but are not limited to, para-aminophenyltriethoxysilane. Also derivatized polystyrenes and other such polymers are well known and readily available to

30 those of skill in this art (e.g., the Tentagel® Resins are available with a multitude of functional groups, and are sold by Rapp Polymere, Tübingen, Germany; see, U.S. Patent No. 4,908,405 and U.S. Patent No. 5,292,814; see, also Butz et al.,

*Peptide Res.*, 7:20-23 (1994); and Kleine et al., *Immunobiol.*, 190:53-66 (1994)).

- These matrix materials include any material that can act as a support matrix for attachment of the molecules of interest. Such materials are known to those of skill in this art, and include those that are used as a support matrix. These materials include, but are not limited to, inorganics, natural polymers, and synthetic polymers, including, but are not limited to: cellulose, cellulose derivatives, acrylic resins, glass, silica gels, polystyrene, gelatin, polyvinyl pyrrolidone, co-polymers of vinyl and acrylamide, polystyrene cross-linked with divinylbenzene and others (see, Merrifield, *Biochemistry*, 3:1385-1390 (1964)), polyacrylamides, latex gels, polystyrene, dextran, polyacrylamides, rubber, silicon, plastics, nitrocellulose, celluloses, natural sponges. Of particular interest herein, are highly porous glasses (see, e.g., U.S. Patent No. 4,244,721) and others prepared by mixing a borosilicate, alcohol and water.
- Synthetic supports include, but are not limited to: acrylamides, dextran-derivatives and dextran co-polymers, agarose-polyacrylamide blends, other polymers and co-polymers with various functional groups, methacrylate derivatives and co-polymers, polystyrene and polystyrene copolymers (see, e.g., Merrifield, *Biochemistry*, 3:1385-1390 (1964); Berg et al., in *Innovation Perspect. Solid Phase Synth. Collect. Pap.*, Int. Symp., 1st, Epton, Roger (Ed), pp. 453-459 (1990); Berg et al., *Pept., Proc. Eur. Pept. Symp.*, 20th, Jung, G. et al. (Eds), pp. 196-198 (1989); Berg et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 111:8024-8026 (1989); Kent et al., *Isr. J. Chem.*, 17:243-247 (1979); Kent et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 43:2845-2852 (1978); Mitchell et al., *Tetrahedron Lett.*, 42:3795-3798 (1976); U.S. Patent No. 4,507,230; U.S. Patent No. 4,006,117; and U.S. Patent No. 5,389,449). Such materials include those made from polymers and co-polymers such as polyvinylalcohols, acrylates and acrylic acids such as polyethylene-co-acrylic acid, polyethylene-co-methacrylic acid, polyethylene-co-ethylacrylate, polyethylene-co-methyl acrylate, polypropylene-co-acrylic acid, polypropylene-co-methyl-acrylic acid, polypropylene-co-ethylacrylate, polypropylene-co-methyl acrylate, polyethylene-co-vinyl acetate, polypropylene-co-vinyl acetate, and those containing acid anhydride groups such as

-86-

polyethylene-co-maleic anhydride and polypropylene-co-maleic anhydride. Liposomes have also been used as solid supports for affinity purifications (Powell et al. *Biotechnol. Bioeng.*, 33:173 (1989)).

- Numerous methods have been developed for the immobilization of
- 5 proteins and other biomolecules onto solid or liquid supports (see, e.g., Mosbach, *Methods in Enzymology*, 44 (1976); Weetall, *Immobilized Enzymes, Antigens, Antibodies, and Peptides*, (1975); Kennedy et al., *Solid Phase Biochemistry, Analytical and Synthetic Aspects*, Scouten, ed., pp. 253-391 (1983); see, generally, *Affinity Techniques. Enzyme Purification: Part B*.
- 10 *Methods in Enzymology*, Vol. 34, ed. W. B. Jakoby, M. Wilchek, Acad. Press, N.Y. (1974); and *Immobilized Biochemicals and Affinity Chromatography, Advances in Experimental Medicine and Biology*, vol. 42, ed. R. Dunlap, Plenum Press, N.Y. (1974)).

- Among the most commonly used methods are absorption and adsorption
- 15 or covalent binding to the support, either directly or via a linker, such as the numerous disulfide linkages, thioether bonds, hindered disulfide bonds, and covalent bonds between free reactive groups, such as amine and thiol groups, known to those of skill in art (see, e.g., the PIERCE CATALOG, ImmunoTechnology Catalog & Handbook, 1992-1993, which describes the
- 20 preparation of and use of such reagents and provides a commercial source for such reagents; Wong, *Chemistry of Protein Conjugation and Cross Linking*, CRC Press (1993); see also DeWitt et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 90:6909 (1993); Zuckermann et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 114:10646 (1992); Kurth et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 116:2661 (1994); Ellman et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.*, 91:4708 (1994); Suholeiki, *Tetrahedron Letts.*, 35:7307 (1994); Su-Sun Wang, *J. Org. Chem.*, 41:3258 (1976); Padwa et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 41:3550 (1971); and Vedejs et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, 49:575 (1984), which describe photosensitive linkers).

- To effect immobilization, a composition containing the protein or other
- 30 biomolecule is contacted with a support material such as alumina, carbon, an ion-exchange resin, cellulose, glass or a ceramic. Fluorocarbon polymers have been used as supports to which biomolecules have been attached by adsorption

-87-

(see, U.S. Patent No. 3,843,443; Published International PCT Application WO/86 03840).

**G. Prognosis and diagnosis**

- Endotheliase proteins, domains, analogs, and derivatives thereof,*
- 5   *endotheliase* nucleic acids (and sequences complementary thereto), and anti-  
endotheliase antibodies, have uses in diagnostics. Such molecules can be used  
in assays, such as immunoassays, to detect, prognose, diagnose, or monitor  
various conditions, diseases, and disorders affecting endotheliase expression, or  
monitor the treatment thereof. In particular, such an immunoassay is carried out
- 10   by a method including contacting a sample derived from a patient with an anti-  
endotheliase antibody under conditions such that immunospecific binding can  
occur, and detecting or measuring the amount of any immunospecific binding by  
the antibody. In a specific aspect, such binding of antibody, in tissue sections,  
can be used to detect aberrant endotheliase localization or aberrant (e.g., low or  
15   absent) levels of endotheliase protein. In a specific embodiment, antibody to  
endotheliase protein can be used to assay in a patient tissue or serum sample for  
the presence of endotheliase protein where an aberrant level of endotheliase  
protein is an indication of a diseased condition.

- The immunoassays which can be used include but are not limited to
- 20   competitive and non-competitive assay systems using techniques such as  
western blots, radioimmunoassays, ELISA (enzyme linked immunosorbent  
assay), "sandwich" immunoassays, immunoprecipitation assays, precipitin  
reactions, gel diffusion precipitin reactions, immunodiffusion assays,  
agglutination assays, complement-fixation assays, immunoradiometric assays,  
25   fluorescent immunoassays, protein A immunoassays, to name but a few.

*Endotheliase genes and related nucleic acid sequences and subsequences,  
including complementary sequences, can also be used in hybridization assays.*

- Endotheliase* nucleic acid sequences, or subsequences thereof containing about  
at least 8 nucleotides, preferably 14 or 16 or more contiguous nucleotides, can  
30   be used as hybridization probes. Hybridization assays can be used to detect,  
prognose, diagnose, or monitor conditions, disorders, or disease states  
associated with aberrant changes in endotheliase expression and/or activity as

described *supra*. In particular, such a hybridization assay is carried out by a method by contacting a sample containing nucleic acid with a nucleic acid probe capable of hybridizing to *endotheliase* DNA or RNA, under conditions such that hybridization can occur, and detecting or measuring any resulting hybridization.

- 5        In a specific embodiment, a method of diagnosing a disease or disorder characterized by detecting an aberrant level of an endotheliase in a subject is provided herein by measuring the level of the DNA, RNA, protein or functional activity of the epithelial endotheliase at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1 in a sample derived from the subject, wherein an increase or decrease in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein or functional activity of the endotheliase, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the disease or disorder indicates the presence of the disease or disorder in the subject.
- 10      In another specific embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis in a subject is provided by measuring the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1 in a sample derived from the subject, wherein an increase in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity in the sample, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis, indicates the presence of the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis.
- 15      In still another specific embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated with deficient angiogenesis in a subject is provided herein, which method by measuring the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1 in a sample derived from the subject, wherein an decrease in the level of the DNA,
- 20      In still another specific embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis in a subject is provided herein, which method by measuring the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1 in a sample derived from the subject, wherein an increase in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity in the sample, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis, indicates the presence of the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis.
- 25      In still another specific embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated with deficient angiogenesis in a subject is provided herein, which method by measuring the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1 in a sample derived from the subject, wherein an decrease in the level of the DNA,
- 30      In still another specific embodiment, a method of diagnosing or screening for the presence of or a predisposition for developing a disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis in a subject is provided herein, which method by measuring the level of DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity of an endotheliase at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1 in a sample derived from the subject, wherein an increase in the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity in the sample, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis, indicates the presence of the undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis.

-89-

RNA, protein, or functional activity in the sample, relative to the level of the DNA, RNA, protein, or functional activity found in an analogous sample not having the deficient angiogenesis, indicates the presence of the deficient angiogenesis.

- 5        Kits for diagnostic use are also provided, that comprise in one or more containers an anti-endotheliase antibody, and, optionally, a labeled binding partner to the antibody. Alternatively, the anti-endotheliase antibody can be labeled (with a detectable marker, e.g., a chemiluminescent, enzymatic, fluorescent, or radioactive moiety). A kit is also provided that includes in one or
- 10      more containers a nucleic acid probe capable of hybridizing to endotheliase-encoding RNA. In a specific embodiment, a kit can comprise in one or more containers a pair of primers (e.g., each in the size range of 6-30 nucleotides) that are capable of priming amplification [e.g., by polymerase chain reaction (see e.g., Innis et al., 1990, PCR Protocols, Academic Press, Inc., San Diego, CA),
- 15      ligase chain reaction (see EP 320,308) use of Q $\beta$  replicase, cyclic probe reaction, or other methods known in the art under appropriate reaction conditions of at least a portion of an endotheliase-encoding nucleic acid. A kit can optionally further comprise in a container a predetermined amount of a purified endotheliase protein or nucleic acid, e.g., for use as a standard or control.
- 20      **H. PHARMACEUTICAL COMPOSITIONS AND MODES OF ADMINISTRATION**
  1.      **Components of the compositions**

Pharmaceutical compositions containing the identified compounds that modulate the activity of an endotheliase are provided herein. Also provided are combinations of a compound that modulates the activity of an endotheliase and
  - 25      another treatment or compound for treatment of a disorder involving aberrant angiogenesis, such as a pro-angiogenic treatment or agent, or an anti-angiogenic treatment or agent. In certain embodiments, the compounds that modulate the activity of an endotheliase inhibit its activity and other compound is an anti-angiogenic treatment or agent.
  - 30      The endotheliase modulator and the anti-angiogenic or pro-angiogenic agent can be packaged as separate compositions for administration together or sequentially or intermittently. Alternatively, they can be contained in a single

-90-

composition for administration as a single composition. The combinations can be packaged as kits.

a. **Endotheliase inhibitors**

Any endotheliase inhibitors, including those described herein when used  
5 alone or in combination with other compounds, that can alleviate, reduce,  
ameliorate, prevent, or place or maintain in a state of remission of clinical  
symptoms or diagnostic markers associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled  
angiogenesis, particularly vascular malformations and cardiovascular disorders,  
chronic inflammatory diseases and aberrant wound repairs, circulatory disorders,  
10 crest syndromes, dermatological disorders, or ocular disorders, can be used in  
the present combinations.

In one embodiment, the endotheliase inhibitor is an antibody or fragment  
thereof that specifically reacts with an endotheliase or the protease domain  
thereof, an inhibitor of the endotheliase production, an inhibitor of the epithelial  
15 endotheliase membrane-localization, or any inhibitor of the expression of or  
activity of an endotheliase.

b. **Anti-angiogenic agent**

Any anti-angiogenic agents, including those described herein, when used  
alone or in combination with other compounds, that can alleviate, reduce,  
20 ameliorate, prevent, or place or maintain in a state of remission of clinical  
symptoms or diagnostic markers associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled  
angiogenesis, particularly solid neoplasms, vascular malformations and  
cardiovascular disorders, chronic inflammatory diseases and aberrant wound  
repairs, circulatory disorders, crest syndromes, dermatological disorders, or  
25 ocular disorders, can be used in the combinations.

In a specific embodiment, the anti-angiogenic agent used in the  
combination is an inhibitor of basement membrane degradation, an inhibitor of  
cell migration, an inhibitor of endothelial cell proliferation, an inhibitor of three-  
dimensional organization and establishment of patency, or a physiological or  
30 physical anti-angiogenic treatment.

Examples of anti-angiogenic agents include, but are not limited to,  
protease inhibitors, endostatin, taxol, taxol, TGF- $\beta$ , FGF inhibitors (see, Auerbach

-91-

and Auerbach, *Pharmacol. Ther.*, 63(3):265-311 (1994) for a comprehensive listing of well known anti-angiogenic agents). Particular anti-angiogenic agents used in the combination include AGM-1470 (TNP-470), angiostatic steroids, angiostatin, antibodies against av $\beta$ 3, antibodies against bFGF, antibodies against

- 5 IL-1, antibodies against TNF- $\alpha$ , antibodies against VEGF, auranofin, azathioprine, BB-94, BB-2516, basic FGF-soluble receptor, carboxyamido-trizole (CAI), cartilage-derived inhibitor (CDI), chitin, chloroquine, cisplatin, CM 101, cortisone/heparin, cortisone/hyaluroflan, cortexolone/heparin, CT-2584, cyclophosphamide, cyclosporin A, dexamethasone, diclofenac/hyaluronan,
- 10 eosinophilic major basic protein, fibronectin peptides, glioma-derived angiogenesis inhibitory factor (GD-AIF), GM 1474, gold chloride, gold thiomalate, heparinases, hyaluronan (high and low molecular-weight species), hydrocortisone/beta-cyclodextran, ibuprofen, indomethacin, interferon-alpha, interferon gamma-inducible protein 10, interferon-gamma, IL-1, IL-2, IL-4, IL-12,
- 15 laminin, levamisole, linomide, LM609, marimastat (BB-2516), medroxyprogesterone, Metastat (Col-3), methotrexate, minocycline, nitric oxide, octreotide (somatostatin analogue), Paclitaxel, D-penicillamine, pentosan polysulfate, placental proliferin-related protein, placental Rnase inhibitor, plasminogen activator inhibitor (PAIs), platelet factor-4 (PF4), prednisolone,
- 20 prolactin (16-Kda fragment), proliferin-related protein, prostaglandin synthase inhibitor, protamine, retinoids, Roquinimex (LS-2616. linomide), somatostatin, substance P, suramin, SU101, tecogalan sodium (DS-4152), tetrahydrocortisol-sthrombospondins (TSPs), tissue inhibitor of metalloproteinases (TIMP 1, 2, 3), vascular endothelial growth factor inhibitors, vitamin A, Vitaxin, vitreous fluids,
- 25 thalidomide, 3-aminothalidomide, 3-hydroxythalidomide and metabolites or hydrolysis products of thalidomide, 3-aminothalidomide, or 3-hydroxythalidomide ((O'Reilly, *Investigational New Drugs*, 15:5-13 (1997); *J. Nat'l Cancer Inst.*, 88:786-788 (1996); U.S. Patent Nos. 5,593,990, 5,629,327 and 5,712,291).

c. **Pro-angiogenic agent**

- 30 Any pro-angiogenic agents, including those described herein, when used alone or in combination with other compounds, that can promote physiological angiogenesis, particularly angiogenesis involved in normal placental, embryonic,

-92-

fetal and post-natal development and growth, physiologically cyclical development in the ovarian follicle, corpus luteum and post-menstrual endometrium or wound healing, can be used in the present combinations.

The pro-angiogenic agent used in the combination can be a pro-

- 5 angiogenic cytokine (Desai and Libutti, *J. Immunother.*, 22(3):186-211 (1999)). More preferably, the pro-angiogenic cytokine used is a basic fibroblast growth factor such as bFGF and FGF-2, a vascular endothelial growth factor/vascular permeability factor such as VEGF/VPF and vasculotropin, a platelet-derived endothelial cell growth factor such as PD-EDGF and thymidine phosphorylase, a
- 10 transforming growth factor-beta (TGF- $\beta$ ), or angiopoietin-1 (Ang-1).

**2. Formulations and route of administration**

- The compounds herein and agents are preferably formulated as pharmaceutical compositions, preferably for single dosage administration. The concentrations of the compounds in the formulations are effective for delivery of
- 15 an amount, upon administration, that is effective for the intended treatment. Typically, the compositions are formulated for single dosage administration. To formulate a composition, the weight fraction of a compound or mixture thereof is dissolved, suspended, dispersed or otherwise mixed in a selected vehicle at an effective concentration such that the treated condition is relieved or ameliorated.
  - 20 Pharmaceutical carriers or vehicles suitable for administration of the compounds provided herein include any such carriers known to those skilled in the art to be suitable for the particular mode of administration.

- In addition, the compounds may be formulated as the sole pharmaceutically active ingredient in the composition or may be combined with
- 25 other active ingredients. Liposomal suspensions, including tissue-targeted liposomes, may also be suitable as pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. These may be prepared according to methods known to those skilled in the art. For example, liposome formulations may be prepared as described in U.S. Patent No. 4,522,811.

- 30 The active compound is included in the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier in an amount sufficient to exert a therapeutically useful effect in the absence of undesirable side effects on the patient treated. The therapeutically

-93-

effective concentration may be determined empirically by testing the compounds in known in vitro and in vivo systems, such as the assays provided herein.

The concentration of active compound in the drug composition will depend on absorption, inactivation and excretion rates of the active compound,

- 5 the physicochemical characteristics of the compound, the dosage schedule, and amount administered as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art.

Typically a therapeutically effective dosage is contemplated. The amounts administered may be on the order of 0.001 to 1 mg/ml, preferably about 0.005-0.05 mg/ml, more preferably about 0.01 mg/ml, of blood volume.

- 10 Pharmaceutical dosage unit forms are prepared to provide from about 1 mg to about 1000 mg and preferably from about 10 to about 500 mg, more preferably about 25-75 mg of the essential active ingredient or a combination of essential ingredients per dosage unit form. The precise dosage can be empirically determined.

- 15 The active ingredient may be administered at once, or may be divided into a number of smaller doses to be administered at intervals of time. It is understood that the precise dosage and duration of treatment is a function of the disease being treated and may be determined empirically using known testing protocols or by extrapolation from in vivo or in vitro test data. It is to be noted

- 20 that concentrations and dosage values may also vary with the severity of the condition to be alleviated. It is to be further understood that for any particular subject, specific dosage regimens should be adjusted over time according to the individual need and the professional judgment of the person administering or supervising the administration of the compositions, and that the concentration

- 25 ranges set forth herein are exemplary only and are not intended to limit the scope or use of the claimed compositions and combinations containing them.

Preferred pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives include acids, salts, esters, hydrates, solvates and prodrug forms. The derivative is typically selected such that its pharmacokinetic properties are superior to the corresponding

- 30 neutral compound.

-94-

Thus, effective concentrations or amounts of one or more of the compounds provided herein or pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives thereof are mixed with a suitable pharmaceutical carrier or vehicle for systemic, topical or local administration to form pharmaceutical compositions. Compounds are

5 included in an amount effective for ameliorating or treating the disorder for which treatment is contemplated. The concentration of active compound in the composition will depend on absorption, inactivation, excretion rates of the active compound, the dosage schedule, amount administered, particular formulation as well as other factors known to those of skill in the art.

10 Solutions or suspensions used for parenteral, intradermal, subcutaneous, or topical application can include any of the following components: a sterile diluent, such as water for injection, saline solution, fixed oil, polyethylene glycol, glycerine, propylene glycol or other synthetic solvent; antimicrobial agents, such as benzyl alcohol and methyl parabens; antioxidants, such as ascorbic acid and

15 sodium bisulfite; chelating agents, such as ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA); buffers, such as acetates, citrates and phosphates; and agents for the adjustment of tonicity such as sodium chloride or dextrose. Parenteral preparations can be enclosed in ampules, disposable syringes or single or multiple dose vials made of glass, plastic or other suitable material.

20 In instances in which the compounds exhibit insufficient solubility, methods for solubilizing compounds may be used. Such methods are known to those of skill in this art, and include, but are not limited to, using cosolvents, such as dimethylsulfoxide (DMSO), using surfactants, such as Tween<sup>®</sup>, or dissolution in aqueous sodium bicarbonate. Derivatives of the compounds, such as prodrugs of the compounds may also be used in formulating effective pharmaceutical compositions.

25 For ophthalmic indications, the compositions are formulated in an ophthalmically acceptable carrier. For the ophthalmic uses herein, local administration, either by topical administration or by injection is preferred. Time release formulations  
30 are also desirable. Typically, the compositions are formulated for single dosage administration, so that a single dose administers an effective amount.

-95-

Upon mixing or addition of the compound with the vehicle, the resulting mixture may be a solution, suspension, emulsion or other composition. The form of the resulting mixture depends upon a number of factors, including the intended mode of administration and the solubility of the compound in the selected carrier or vehicle. If necessary, pharmaceutically acceptable salts or other derivatives of the compounds may be prepared.

The compound is included in the pharmaceutically acceptable carrier in an amount sufficient to exert a therapeutically useful effect in the absence of undesirable side effects on the patient treated. It is understood that number and degree of side effects depends upon the condition for which the compounds are administered. For example, certain toxic and undesirable side effects are tolerated when treating life-threatening illnesses that would not be tolerated when treating disorders of lesser consequence.

The compounds can also be mixed with other active materials, that do not impair the desired action, or with materials that supplement the desired action known to those of skill in the art for treating diseases or disorders associated with aberrant angiogenesis and other disorders for which the treatments provided herein are contemplated.

The formulations of the compounds and agents for use herein include those suitable for oral, rectal, topical, inhalational, buccal (e.g., sublingual), parenteral (e.g., subcutaneous, intramuscular, intradermal, or intravenous), transdermal administration or any route. The most suitable route in any given case will depend on the nature and severity of the condition being treated and on the nature of the particular active compound which is being used.

The formulations are provided for administration to humans and animals in unit dosage forms, such as tablets, capsules, pills, powders, granules, sterile parenteral solutions or suspensions, and oral solutions or suspensions, and oil-water emulsions containing suitable quantities of the compounds or pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives thereof. The pharmaceutically active compounds and derivatives thereof are typically formulated and administered in unit-dosage forms or multiple-dosage forms. Unit-dose forms as used herein refers to physically discrete units suitable for human and

-96-

- animal subjects and packaged individually as is known in the art. Each unit-dose contains a predetermined quantity of the therapeutically active compound sufficient to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with the required pharmaceutical carrier, vehicle or diluent. Examples of unit-dose forms
- 5 include ampoules and syringes and individually packaged tablets or capsules. Unit-dose forms may be administered in fractions or multiples thereof. A multiple-dose form is a plurality of identical unit-dosage forms packaged in a single container to be administered in segregated unit-dose form. Examples of multiple-dose forms include vials, bottles of tablets or capsules or bottles of
- 10 pints or gallons. Hence, multiple dose form is a multiple of unit-doses which are not segregated in packaging.

The composition can contain along with the active ingredient: a diluent such as lactose, sucrose, dicalcium phosphate, or carboxymethylcellulose; a lubricant, such as magnesium stearate, calcium stearate and talc; and a binder

15 such as starch, natural gums, such as gum acaciagelatin, glucose, molasses, polyvinylpyrrolidine, celluloses and derivatives thereof, povidone, crospovidones and other such binders known to those of skill in the art. Liquid pharmaceutically administrable compositions can, for example, be prepared by dissolving, dispersing, or otherwise mixing an active compound as defined above

20 and optional pharmaceutical adjuvants in a carrier, such as, for example, water, saline, aqueous dextrose, glycerol, glycals, ethanol, and the like, to thereby form a solution or suspension. If desired, the pharmaceutical composition to be administered may also contain minor amounts of nontoxic auxiliary substances such as wetting agents, emulsifying agents, or solubilizing agents, pH buffering

25 agents and the like, for example, acetate, sodium citrate, cyclodextrine derivatives, sorbitan monolaurate, triethanolamine sodium acetate, triethanolamine oleate, and other such agents. Actual methods of preparing such dosage forms are known, or will be apparent, to those skilled in this art; for example, see Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences, Mack Publishing Company,

30 Easton, Pa., 15th Edition, 1975. The composition or formulation to be administered will, in any event, contain a quantity of the active compound in an amount sufficient to alleviate the symptoms of the treated subject.

-97-

Dosage forms or compositions containing active ingredient in the range of 0.005% to 100% with the balance made up from non-toxic carrier may be prepared.

- For oral administration, the pharmaceutical compositions may take the
- 5 form of, for example, tablets or capsules prepared by conventional means with pharmaceutically acceptable excipients such as binding agents (e.g., pregelatinized maize starch, polyvinyl pyrrolidone or hydroxypropyl methylcellulose); fillers (e.g., lactose, microcrystalline cellulose or calcium hydrogen phosphate); lubricants (e.g., magnesium stearate, talc or silica);
- 10 disintegrants (e.g., potato starch or sodium starch glycolate); or wetting agents (e.g., sodium lauryl sulphate). The tablets may be coated by methods well-known in the art.

- The pharmaceutical preparation may also be in liquid form, for example, solutions, syrups or suspensions, or may be presented as a drug product for
- 15 reconstitution with water or other suitable vehicle before use. Such liquid preparations may be prepared by conventional means with pharmaceutically acceptable additives such as suspending agents (e.g., sorbitol syrup, cellulose derivatives or hydrogenated edible fats); emulsifying agents (e.g., lecithin or acacia); non-aqueous vehicles (e.g., almond oil, oily esters, or fractionated
- 20 vegetable oils); and preservatives (e.g., methyl or propyl-p-hydroxybenzoates or sorbic acid).

- Formulations suitable for rectal administration are preferably presented as unit dose suppositories. These may be prepared by admixing the active compound with one or more conventional solid carriers, for example, cocoa
- 25 butter, and then shaping the resulting mixture.

- Formulations suitable for topical application to the skin or to the eye preferably take the form of an ointment, cream, lotion, paste, gel, spray, aerosol, or oil. Carriers which may be used include vaseline, lanoline, polyethylene glycols, alcohols, and combinations of two or more thereof. The topical
- 30 formulations may further advantageously contain 0.05 to 15 percent by weight of thickeners selected from among hydroxypropyl methyl cellulose, methyl cellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, polyvinyl alcohol, poly (alkylene glycols),

-98-

- poly/hydroxyalkyl, (meth)acrylates or poly(meth)acrylamides. The topical formulations is most often applied by instillation or as an ointment into the conjunctival sac. It, however, can also be used for irrigation or lubrication of the eye, facial sinuses, and external auditory meatus. It may also be injected into
- 5 the anterior eye chamber and other places. The topical formulations in the liquid state may be also present in a hydrophilic three-dimensional polymer matrix in the form of a strip, contact lens, and the like from which the active components are released.

For administration by inhalation, the compounds for use herein can be

10 delivered in the form of an aerosol spray presentation from pressurized packs or a nebulizer, with the use of a suitable propellant, e.g., dichlorodifluoromethane, trichlorofluoromethane, dichlorotetrafluoroethane, carbon dioxide or other suitable gas. In the case of a pressurized aerosol, the dosage unit may be determined by providing a valve to deliver a metered amount. Capsules and

15 cartridges of, e.g., gelatin, for use in an inhaler or insufflator may be formulated containing a powder mix of the compound and a suitable powder base such as lactose or starch.

Formulations suitable for buccal (sublingual) administration include lozenges containing the active compound in a flavored base, usually sucrose and

20 acacia or tragacanth; and pastilles containing the compound in an inert base such as gelatin and glycerin or sucrose and acacia.

The compounds may be formulated for parenteral administration by injection, e.g., by bolus injection or continuous infusion. Formulations for injection may be presented in unit dosage form, e.g., in ampules or in multi-dose

25 containers, with an added preservative. The compositions may take such forms as suspensions, solutions or emulsions in oily or aqueous vehicles, and may contain formulatory agents such as suspending, stabilizing and/or dispersing agents. Alternatively, the active ingredient may be in powder form for constitution with a suitable vehicle, e.g., sterile pyrogen-free water or other

30 solvents, before use.

Formulations suitable for transdermal administration may be presented as discrete patches adapted to remain in intimate contact with the epidermis of the

-99-

recipient for a prolonged period of time. Such patches suitably contain the active compound as an optionally buffered aqueous solution of, for example, 0.1 to 0.2M concentration with respect to the the active compound. Formulations suitable for transdermal administration may also be delivered by iontophoresis

- 5 (see, e.g., Pharmaceutical Research 3 (6), 318 (1986)) and typically take the form of an optionally buffered aqueous solution of the active compound.

In addition to the common dosage forms set out above, the pharmaceutical compositions may also be administered by controlled release means and/or delivery devices (see, e.g., in U.S. Patent Nos. 3,536,809;

- 10 3,598,123; 3,630,200; 3,845,770; 3,847,770; 3,916,899; 4,008,719; 4,687,610; 4,769,027; 5,059,595; 5,073,543; 5,120,548; 5,354,566; 5,591,767; 5,639,476; 5,674,533 and 5,733,566).

Desirable blood levels may be maintained by a continuous infusion of the active agent as ascertained by plasma levels. It should be noted that the

- 15 attending physician would know how to and when to terminate, interrupt or adjust therapy to lower dosage due to toxicity, or bone marrow, liver or kidney dysfunctions. Conversely, the attending physician would also know how to and when to adjust treatment to higher levels if the clinical response is not adequate (precluding toxic side effects).

- 20 The efficacy and/or toxicity of the endotheliase inhibitor(s), alone or in combination with the anti-angiogenic agent or pro-angiogenic agent can also be assessed by the methods known in the art (See generally, O'Reilly, *Investigational New Drugs*, 15:5-13 (1997)). For example, the *in vitro* angiogenesis assays based on target compound's ability to inhibit endothelial cell 25 proliferation, migration, and tube formation *in vitro* can be used. Alternatively, the *in vivo* angiogenesis assays such as the chicken chorioallantoic membrane (CAM) assay and the disc angiogenesis assays can be used. Preferably, the established pre-clinical models for the evaluation of angiogenesis inhibitors *in vivo* such as corneal angiogenesis assays, primate model of ocular angiogenesis, 30 metastasis models, primary tumor growth model and transgenic mouse model of tumor growth can be used.

-100-

The active compounds or pharmaceutically acceptable derivatives may be prepared with carriers that protect the compound against rapid elimination from the body, such as time release formulations or coatings.

Kits containing the compositions and/or the combinations with

- 5 instructions for administration thereof are provided. The kit may further include a needle or syringe, preferably packaged in sterile form, for injecting the complex, and/or a packaged alcohol pad. Instructions are optionally included for administration of the active agent by a clinician or by the patient.

Finally, the compounds or endotheliases or protease domains thereof or  
10 compositions containing any of the preceding agents may be packaged as articles of manufacture containing packaging material, a compound or suitable derivative thereof provided herein, which is effective for treatment of a disease or disorders contemplated herein, within the packaging material, and a label that indicates that the compound or a suitable derivative thereof is for treating the  
15 diseases or disorders contemplated herein. The label can optionally include the disorders for which the therapy is warranted.

#### I. METHODS OF TREATMENT

##### 1. Treatment of undesired angiogenesis

The compounds and combinations are used for treating or preventing a  
20 disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis in a mammal as provided herein. In one embodiment, the method includes administering to a mammal an effective amount of an inhibitor of an endotheliase, whereby the disease or disorder is treated or prevented. In a preferred embodiment, the endotheliase inhibitor used in the treatment or  
25 prevention is administered with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient. The mammal treated can be a human.

In other embodiments, the treatment or prevention method further includes administering an anti-angiogenic treatment or agent simultaneously with, prior to or subsequent to the endotheliase inhibitor, which can be any  
30 compound identified that inhibits the activity of an endotheliase, and includes an antibody or a fragment or derivative thereof containing the binding region thereof against the endotheliase, an antisense nucleic acid encoding the endotheliase,

-101-

and a nucleic acid containing at least a portion of a gene encoding the endotheliase into which a heterologous nucleotide sequence has been inserted such that the heterologous sequence inactivates the biological activity of at least a portion of the gene encoding the endotheliase, in which the portion of the gene

- 5 encoding the endotheliase flanks the heterologous sequence so as to promote homologous recombination with a genomic gene encoding the endotheliase.

The undesired or aberrant angiogenesis to be treated or prevented is associated with solid neoplasms, vascular malformations and cardiovascular disorders, chronic inflammatory diseases and aberrant wound repairs, circulatory

- 10 disorders, crest syndromes, dermatological disorders, or ocular disorders.

Vascular malformations and cardiovascular disorders to be treated or prevented include angiofibroma, angioma, atherosclerosis, restenosis/reperfusion injury, arteriovenous malformations, hemangiomas and vascular adhesions, dyschondroplasia with vascular hamartomas (Fafucci's syndrome), hereditary

- 15 hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome), or Von Hippel Lindau syndrome; the chronic inflammatory diseases to be treated or prevented are diabetes mellitus, hemophiliac joints, inflammatory bowel disease, nonhealing fractures, periodontitis (rapidly progressing and juvenile), psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, venous stasis ulcers, granulations-burns, hypertrophic scars, liver

- 20 cirrhosis, osteoradionecrosis, postoperative adhesions, pyogenic granuloma, or systemic sclerosis; the circulatory disorder to be treated or prevented is Raynaud's phenomenon; the crest syndromes to be treated or prevented are calcinosis, esophageal, dyomotility, sclerodactyly and telangiectasis; the dermatological disorders to be treated or prevented are systemic vasculitis,

- 25 scleroderma, pyoderma gangrenosum, vasculopathy, venous, arterial ulcers, Sturge-Weber syndrome, Port-wine stains, blue rubber bleb nevus syndrome, Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber syndrome or Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome; and the ocular disorders to be treated or prevented are blindness caused by ocular neovascular disease, corneal graft neovascularization, macular degeneration in

- 30 the eye, neovascular glaucoma, trachoma, diabetic retinopathy, myopic degeneration, retinopathy of prematurity, retrobulbar fibroplasia, or corneal neovascularization.

-102-

a. **Antisense treatment**

In a specific embodiment, as described hereinabove, endotheliase function is reduced or inhibited by endotheliase antisense nucleic acids, to treat or prevent disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis. The therapeutic or prophylactic use of nucleic acids of at least six nucleotides that are antisense to a gene or cDNA encoding endotheliase or a portion thereof. An endotheliase "antisense" nucleic acid as used herein refers to a nucleic acid capable of hybridizing to a portion of an endotheliase RNA (preferably mRNA) by virtue of some sequence complementarity. The antisense nucleic acid may be complementary to a coding and/or noncoding region of an endotheliase mRNA. Such antisense nucleic acids have utility as therapeutics that reduce or inhibit endotheliase function, and can be used in the treatment or prevention of disorders as described *supra*.

The endotheliase antisense nucleic acids are of at least six nucleotides and are preferably oligonucleotides (ranging from 6 to about 150 nucleotides, or more preferably 6 to 50 nucleotides). In specific aspects, the oligonucleotide is at least 10 nucleotides, at least 15 nucleotides, at least 100 nucleotides, or at least 125 nucleotides. The oligonucleotides can be DNA or RNA or chimeric mixtures or derivatives or modified versions thereof, single-stranded or double-stranded. The oligonucleotide can be modified at the base moiety, sugar moiety, or phosphate backbone. The oligonucleotide may include other appending groups such as peptides, or agents facilitating transport across the cell membrane (see, e.g., Letsinger et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 86:6553-6556 (1989); Lemaitre et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 84:648-652 (1987); PCT Publication No. WO 88/09810, published December 15, 1988) or blood-brain barrier (see, e.g., PCT Publication No. WO 89/10134, published April 25, 1988), hybridization-triggered cleavage agents (see, e.g., Krol et al., *BioTechniques* 6:958-976 (1988)) or intercalating agents (see, e.g., Zon, *Pharm. Res.* 5:539-549 (1988)).

30 The endotheliase antisense nucleic acid is preferably an oligonucleotide, more preferably of single-stranded DNA. In a preferred aspect, the oligonucleotide includes a sequence antisense to a portion of human

-103-

endotheliase. The oligonucleotide may be modified at any position on its structure with substituents generally known in the art.

The endotheliase antisense oligonucleotide may comprise at least one modified base moiety which is selected from the group including, but not limited

- 5 to 5-fluorouracil, 5-bromouracil, 5-chlorouracil, 5-iodouracil, hypoxanthine, xantine, 4-acetylcytosine, 5-(carboxyhydroxymethyl) uracil, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyl-2-thiouridine, 5-carboxymethylaminomethyluracil, dihydrouracil, beta-D-galactosylqueosine, inosine, N6-isopentenyladenine, 1-methylguanine, 1-methylinosine, 2,2-dimethylguanine, 2-methyladenine,
- 10 2-methylguanine, 3-methylcytosine, 5-methylcytosine, N6-adenine, 7-methylguanine, 5-methylaminomethyluracil, 5-methoxyaminomethyl-2-thiouracil, beta-D-mannosylqueosine, 5'-methoxycarboxymethyluracil, 5-methoxyuracil, 2-methylthio-N6-isopentenyladenine, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), wybutoxosine, pseudouracil, queosine, 2-thiocytosine, 5-methyl-2-thiouracil,
- 15 2-thiouracil, 4-thiouracil, 5-methyluracil, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid methylester, uracil-5-oxyacetic acid (v), 5-methyl-2-thiouracil, 3-(3-amino-3-N-2-carboxypropyl) uracil, (acp3)w, and 2,6-diaminopurine.

In another embodiment, the oligonucleotide includes at least one modified sugar moiety selected from the group including but not limited to arabinose,

- 20 2-fluoroarabinose, xylulose, and hexose. The oligonucleotide can include at least one modified phosphate backbone selected from a phosphorothioate, a phosphorodithioate, a phosphoramidothioate, a phosphoramidate, a phosphordiamidate, a methylphosphonate, an alkyl phosphotriester, and a formacetal or analog thereof.

- 25 The oligonucleotide can be an  $\alpha$ -anomeric oligonucleotide. An  $\alpha$ -anomeric oligonucleotide forms specific double-stranded hybrids with complementary RNA in which the strands run parallel to each other (*Gautier et al., Nucl. Acids Res. 15:6625-6641 (1987)*).

- 30 The oligonucleotide may be conjugated to another molecule, e.g., a peptide, hybridization triggered cross-linking agent, transport agent and hybridization-triggered cleavage agent.

-104-

The oligonucleotides may be synthesized by standard methods known in the art, e.g. by use of an automated DNA synthesizer (such as are commercially available from Biosearch, Applied Biosystems, etc.). As examples, phosphorothioate oligonucleotides may be synthesized by the method of Stein et al. (*Nucl. Acids Res.* 16:3209 (1988)), methylphosphonate oligonucleotides can be prepared by use of controlled pore glass polymer supports (Sarin et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 85:7448-7451 (1988)), etc.

- In a specific embodiment, the endotheliase antisense oligonucleotide includes catalytic RNA, or a ribozyme (see, e.g., PCT International Publication 10 WO 90/11364, published October 4, 1990; Sarver et al., *Science* 247:1222-1225 (1990)). In another embodiment, the oligonucleotide is a 2'-O-methylribonucleotide (Inoue et al., *Nucl. Acids Res.* 15:6131-6148 (1987)), or a chimeric RNA-DNA analogue (Inoue et al., *FEBS Lett.* 215:327-330 (1987)).

- In an alternative embodiment, the endotheliase antisense nucleic acid is produced intracellularly by transcription from an exogenous sequence. For example, a vector can be introduced *in vivo* such that it is taken up by a cell, within which cell the vector or a portion thereof is transcribed, producing an antisense nucleic acid (RNA). Such a vector would contain a sequence encoding the endotheliase antisense nucleic acid. Such a vector can remain episomal or become chromosomally integrated, as long as it can be transcribed to produce the desired antisense RNA. Such vectors can be constructed by recombinant DNA technology methods standard in the art. Vectors can be plasmid, viral, or others known in the art, used for replication and expression in mammalian cells. Expression of the sequence encoding the endotheliase antisense RNA can be by any promoter known in the art to act in mammalian, preferably human, cells. Such promoters can be inducible or constitutive. Such promoters include but are not limited to: the SV40 early promoter region (Benoist and Chambon, *Nature* 290:304-310 (1981), the promoter contained in the 3' long terminal repeat of Rous sarcoma virus (Yamamoto et al., *Cell* 22:787-797 (1980), the herpes 30 thymidine kinase promoter (Wagner et al., *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. U.S.A.* 78:1441-1445 (1981), the regulatory sequences of the metallothionein gene (Brinster et al., *Nature* 296:39-42 (1982), etc.

-105-

The antisense nucleic acids include sequence complementary to at least a portion of an RNA transcript of an endotheliase gene, preferably a human endotheliase gene. Absolute complementarity, although preferred, is not required.

- 5        The amount of endotheliase antisense nucleic acid that will be effective in the treatment or prevention of disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis will depend on the nature of the disease, and can be determined empirically by standard clinical techniques. Where possible, it is desirable to determine the antisense cytotoxicity in cells *in vitro*, and then in  
10      useful animal model systems prior to testing and use in humans.

2.        **Treatment of deficient angiogenesis**

- In another specific embodiment, a method for treating or preventing a disease or disorder associated with deficient angiogenesis in a mammal is provided herein by administering to a mammal an effective amount of an  
15      endotheliase protein at least partially encoded by a nucleic acid that hybridizes to a nucleic acid having the nucleotide sequence set forth in the SEQ. ID NO:1, a domain, a derivative or analog of the protein that is active in promoting angiogenesis, a nucleic acid encoding the protein, and a nucleic acid encoding a domain, a derivative or analog of the protein that is active in promoting  
20      angiogenesis, whereby the disease or disorder is treated or prevented.

In a preferred embodiment, the endotheliase protein, a domain, a derivative or analog of the protein, a nucleic acid encoding the protein, and a nucleic acid encoding a domain, a derivative or analog of the protein is administered with a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier or excipient.

- 25        In yet another preferred embodiment, the mammal to be treated is a human. The treatment or prevention methods can further include administering an pro-angiogenic treatment or agent. In yet another preferred embodiment, the treatment is used to promote physiological angiogenesis, particularly angiogenesis involved in normal placental, embryonic, fetal and post-natal  
30      development and growth, physiologically cyclical development in the ovarian follicle, corpus luteum and post-menstrual endometrium or wound healing.

-106-

- The pro-angiogenic agent used in the treatment can be, for example, a basic fibroblast growth factor such as bFGF and FGF-2, a vascular endothelial growth factor/vascular permeability factor such as VEGF/VPF and vasculotropin, a platelet-derived endothelial cell growth factor such as PD-EDGF and thymidine 5 phosphorylase, a transforming growth factor-beta (TGF- $\beta$ ), or angiopoietin-1 (Ang-1).

#### Gene Therapy

- In an exemplary embodiment, nucleic acids that include a sequence of nucleotides encoding an endotheliase protein or functional domains or derivative thereof, are administered to promote endotheliase protein function, by way of gene therapy. Gene therapy refers to therapy performed by the administration of a nucleic acid to a subject. In this embodiment, the nucleic acid produces its encoded protein that mediates a therapeutic effect by promoting endotheliase protein function. Any of the methods for gene therapy available in the art can be used (see, Goldspiel et al., *Clinical Pharmacy* 12:488-505 (1993); Wu and Wu, *Biotherapy* 3:87-95 (1991); Tolstoshev, *Ann. Rev. Pharmacol. Toxicol.* 32:573-596 (1993); Mulligan, *Science* 260:926-932 (1993); and Morgan and Anderson, *Ann. Rev. Biochem.* 62:191-217 (1993); *TIBTECH* 11(5):155-215 (1993). For example, one therapeutic composition for gene therapy includes an endotheliase-encoding nucleic acid that is part of an expression vector that expresses an endotheliase protein or domain, fragment or chimeric protein thereof in a suitable host. In particular, such a nucleic acid has a promoter operably linked to the endotheliase coding region, the promoter being inducible or constitutive, and, optionally, tissue-specific. In another particular embodiment, a nucleic acid molecule is used in which the endotheliase coding sequences and any other desired sequences are flanked by regions that promote homologous recombination at a desired site in the genome, thus providing for intrachromosomal expression of the endotheliase nucleic acid (Koller and Smithies, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:8932-8935 (1989); Zijlstra et al., *Nature* 342:435-438 (1989)).

Delivery of the nucleic acid into a patient may be either direct, in which case the patient is directly exposed to the nucleic acid or nucleic acid-carrying

-107-

vector, or indirect, in which case, cells are first transformed with the nucleic acid *in vitro*, then transplanted into the patient. These two approaches are known, respectively, as *in vivo* or *ex vivo* gene therapy.

- In a specific embodiment, the nucleic acid is directly administered *in vivo*,
- 5 where it is expressed to produce the encoded product. This can be accomplished by any of numerous methods known in the art, *e.g.*, by constructing it as part of an appropriate nucleic acid expression vector and administering it so that it becomes intracellular, *e.g.*, by infection using a defective or attenuated retroviral or other viral vector (see U.S. Patent No.
- 10 4,980,286), or by direct injection of naked DNA, or by use of microparticle bombardment (*e.g.*, a gene gun; Biolistic, Dupont), or coating with lipids or cell-surface receptors or transfecting agents, encapsulation in liposomes, microparticles, or microcapsules, or by administering it in linkage to a peptide which is known to enter the nucleus, by administering it in linkage to a ligand
- 15 subject to receptor-mediated endocytosis (see *e.g.*, Wu and Wu, *J. Biol. Chem.* 262:4429-4432 (1987)) (which can be used to target cell types specifically expressing the receptors), etc. In another embodiment, a nucleic acid-ligand complex can be formed in which the ligand is a fusogenic viral peptide to disrupt endosomes, allowing the nucleic acid to avoid lysosomal degradation. In yet
- 20 another embodiment, the nucleic acid can be targeted *in vivo* for cell specific uptake and expression, by targeting a specific receptor (see, *e.g.*, PCT Publications WO 92/06180 dated April 16, 1992 (Wu et al.); WO 92/22635 dated December 23, 1992 (Wilson et al.); WO92/20316 dated November 26, 1992 (Findeis et al.); WO93/14188 dated July 22, 1993 (Clarke et al.), WO
- 25 93/20221 dated October 14, 1993 (Young)). Alternatively, the nucleic acid can be introduced intracellularly and incorporated within host cell DNA for expression, by homologous recombination (Koller and Smithies, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 86:8932-8935 (1989); Zijlstra et al., *Nature* 342:435-438 (1989)).
- In a specific embodiment, a viral vector that contains the endotheliase
- 30 nucleic acid is used. For example, a retroviral vector can be used (see Miller et al., *Meth. Enzymol.* 217:581-599 (1993)). These retroviral vectors have been modified to delete retroviral sequences that are not necessary for packaging of

-108-

the viral genome and integration into host cell DNA. The *endotheliasc* nucleic acid to be used in gene therapy is cloned into the vector, which facilitates delivery of the gene into a patient. More detail about retroviral vectors can be found in Boesen et al., *Biotherapy* 6:291-302 (1994), which describes the use of 5 a retroviral vector to deliver the *mdr1* gene to hematopoietic stem cells in order to make the stem cells more resistant to chemotherapy. Other references illustrating the use of retroviral vectors in gene therapy are: Clowes et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 93:644-651 (1994); Kiem et al., *Blood* 83:1467-1473 (1994); Salmons and Gunzberg, *Human Gene Therapy* 4:129-141 (1993); and Grossman 10 and Wilson, *Curr. Opin. in Genetics and Devel.* 3:110-114 (1993).

Adenoviruses are other viral vectors that can be used in gene therapy. Adenoviruses are especially attractive vehicles for delivering genes to respiratory epithelia. Adenoviruses naturally infect respiratory epithelia where they cause a mild disease. Other targets for adenovirus-based delivery systems are liver, the 15 central nervous system, endothelial cells, and muscle. Adenoviruses have the advantage of being capable of infecting non-dividing cells. Kozarsky and Wilson, *Current Opinion in Genetics and Development* 3:499-503 (1993) present a review of adenovirus-based gene therapy. Bout et al., *Human Gene Therapy* 5:3-10 (1994) demonstrated the use of adenovirus vectors to transfer genes to 20 the respiratory epithelia of rhesus monkeys. Other instances of the use of adenoviruses in gene therapy can be found in Rosenfeld et al., *Science* 252:431-434 (1991); Rosenfeld et al., *Cell* 68:143-155 (1992); and Mastrangeli et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 91:225-234 (1993).

Adeno-associated virus (AAV) has also been proposed for use in gene 25 therapy (Walsh et al., *Proc. Soc. Exp. Biol. Med.* 204:289-300 (1993)).

Another approach to gene therapy involves transferring a gene to cells in tissue culture by such methods as electroporation, lipofection, calcium phosphate mediated transfection, or viral infection. Usually, the method of transfer includes the transfer of a selectable marker to the cells. The cells are 30 then placed under selection to isolate those cells that have taken up and are expressing the transferred gene. Those cells are then delivered to a patient.

-109-

- In this embodiment, the nucleic acid is introduced into a cell prior to administration *in vivo* of the resulting recombinant cell. Such introduction can be carried out by any method known in the art, including but not limited to transfection, electroporation, microinjection, infection with a viral or
- 5 bacteriophage vector containing the nucleic acid sequences, cell fusion, chromosome-mediated gene transfer, microcell-mediated gene transfer, spheroplast fusion, etc. Numerous techniques are known in the art for the introduction of foreign genes into cells (see e.g., Loeffler and Behr, *Meth. Enzymol.* 217:599-618 (1993); Cohen et al., *Meth. Enzymol.* 217:618-644
- 10 (1993); Cline, *Pharmac. Ther.* 29:69-92 (1985)) and may be used, provided that the necessary developmental and physiological functions of the recipient cells are not disrupted. The technique should provide for the stable transfer of the nucleic acid to the cell, so that the nucleic acid is expressible by the cell and preferably heritable and expressible by its cell progeny.
- 15 The resulting recombinant cells can be delivered to a patient by various methods known in the art. In a preferred embodiment, epithelial cells are injected, e.g., subcutaneously. In another embodiment, recombinant skin cells may be applied as a skin graft onto the patient. Recombinant blood cells (e.g., hematopoietic stem or progenitor cells) are preferably administered
- 20 intravenously. The amount of cells envisioned for use depends on the desired effect, patient state, etc., and can be determined by one skilled in the art.
- Cells into which a nucleic acid can be introduced for purposes of gene therapy encompass any desired, available cell type, and include but are not limited to epithelial cells, endothelial cells, keratinocytes, fibroblasts, muscle
- 25 cells, hepatocytes; blood cells such as T lymphocytes, B lymphocytes, monocytes, macrophages, neutrophils, eosinophils, megakaryocytes, granulocytes; various stem or progenitor cells, in particular hematopoietic stem or progenitor cells, e.g., as obtained from bone marrow, umbilical cord blood, peripheral blood, fetal liver, etc.
- 30 In a preferred embodiment, the cell used for gene therapy is autologous to the patient. In an embodiment in which recombinant cells are used in gene therapy, an endotheliase nucleic acid is introduced into the cells such that it is

-110-

- expressible by the cells or their progeny, and the recombinant cells are then administered *in vivo* for therapeutic effect. In a specific embodiment, stem or progenitor cells are used. Any stem and/or progenitor cells which can be isolated and maintained *in vitro* can potentially be used in accordance with this
- 5 embodiment. Such stem cells include but are not limited to hematopoietic stem cells (HSC), stem cells of epithelial tissues such as the skin and the lining of the gut, embryonic heart muscle cells, liver stem cells (PCT Publication WO 94/08598, dated April 28, 1994), and neural stem cells (Stemple and Anderson, *Cell* 71:973-985 (1992)).
- 10       Epithelial stem cells (ESCs) or keratinocytes can be obtained from tissues such as the skin and the lining of the gut by known procedures (Rheinwald, *Meth. Cell Bio.* 21A:229 (1980)). In stratified epithelial tissue such as the skin, renewal occurs by mitosis of stem cells within the germinal layer, the layer closest to the basal lamina. Stem cells within the lining of the gut provide for a
- 15 rapid renewal rate of this tissue. ESCs or keratinocytes obtained from the skin or lining of the gut of a patient or donor can be grown in tissue culture (Rheinwald, *Meth. Cell Bio.* 21A:229 (1980); Pittelkow and Scott, *Mayo Clinic Proc.* 61:771 (1986)). If the ESCs are provided by a donor, a method for suppression of host versus graft reactivity (e.g., irradiation, drug or antibody
- 20 administration to promote moderate immunosuppression) can also be used.
- With respect to hematopoietic stem cells (HSC), any technique which provides for the isolation, propagation, and maintenance *in vitro* of HSC can be used in this embodiment. Techniques by which this may be accomplished include (a) the isolation and establishment of HSC cultures from bone marrow
- 25 cells isolated from the future host, or a donor, or (b) the use of previously established long-term HSC cultures, which may be allogeneic or xenogeneic. Non-autologous HSC are used preferably in conjunction with a method of suppressing transplantation immune reactions of the future host/patient. In a particular embodiment, human bone marrow cells can be obtained from the
- 30 posterior iliac crest by needle aspiration (see, e.g., Kodo et al., *J. Clin. Invest.* 73:1377-1384 (1984)). In a preferred embodiment, the HSCs can be made highly enriched or in substantially pure form. This enrichment can be

-111-

accomplished before, during, or after long-term culturing, and can be done by any techniques known in the art. Long-term cultures of bone marrow cells can be established and maintained by using, for example, modified Dexter cell culture techniques (Dexter et al., *J. Cell Physiol.* 91:335 (1977) or Witlock-Witte culture techniques (Witlock and Witte, *Proc. Natl. Acad. Sci. USA* 79:3608-3612 (1982)).

In a specific embodiment, the nucleic acid to be introduced for purposes of gene therapy includes an inducible promoter operably linked to the coding region, such that expression of the nucleic acid is controllable by controlling the presence or absence of the appropriate inducer of transcription.

**J. ANIMAL MODELS**

Transgenic animal models are provided herein. In one embodiment, animal models for diseases and disorders involving deficient angiogenesis are provided. Such an animal can be initially produced by promoting homologous recombination between an endotheliase gene in its chromosome and an exogenous endotheliase gene that has been rendered biologically inactive (preferably by insertion of a heterologous sequence, e.g., an antibiotic resistance gene). In a preferred aspect, this homologous recombination is carried out by transforming embryo-derived stem (ES) cells with a vector containing the insertionally inactivated endotheliase gene, such that homologous recombination occurs, followed by injecting the ES cells into a blastocyst, and implanting the blastocyst into a foster mother, followed by the birth of the chimeric animal ("knockout animal") in which an endotheliase gene has been inactivated (see Capecchi, *Science* 244:1288-1292 (1989)). The chimeric animal can be bred to produce additional knockout animals. Such animals can be mice, hamsters, sheep, pigs, cattle, etc., and are preferably non-human mammals. In a specific embodiment, a knockout mouse is produced.

Such knockout animals are expected to develop or be predisposed to developing diseases or disorders involving deficient angiogenesis and thus can have use as animal models of such diseases and disorders, e.g., to screen for or test molecules for the ability to treat or prevent such diseases or disorders.

-112-

In a separate embodiment, animal models for diseases and disorders involving uncontrolled and/or undesired angiogenesis are provided. Such an animal can be initially produced by promoting homologous recombination between an *endotheliase* gene in its chromosome and an exogenous

- 5   *endotheliase* gene that would be over-expressed or mis-expressed (preferably by expression under a strong promoter). In a preferred aspect, this homologous recombination is carried out by transforming embryo-derived stem (ES) cells with a vector containing the over-expressed or mis-expressed *endotheliase* gene, such that homologous recombination occurs, followed by injecting the ES cells into a
- 10   blastocyst, and implanting the blastocyst into a foster mother, followed by the birth of the chimeric animal in which an *endotheliase* gene has been over-expressed or mis-expressed (see Capecchi, *Science* 244:1288-1292 (1989)). The chimeric animal can be bred to produce additional animals with over-expressed or mis-expressed endotheliase. Such animals can be mice, hamsters,
- 15   sheep, pigs, cattle, etc., and are preferably non-human mammals. In a specific embodiment, a mouse with over-expressed or mis-expressed endotheliase is produced.

Such animals are expected to develop or be predisposed to developing diseases or disorders involving diseases or disorders involving uncontrolled

- 20   and/or undesired angiogenesis and thus can have use as animal models of such diseases and disorders, e.g., to screen for or test molecules for the ability to inhibit function of endotheliase genes and proteins and thus treat or prevent such diseases or disorders.

The following examples are included for illustrative purposes only and are  
25   not intended to limit the scope of the invention.

#### EXAMPLE 1

##### CLONING AND EXPRESSION OF ENDOTHELIASE-1

###### Cell type and growth of cells

- Human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC P145, hereafter called  
30   HUVEC) were purchased from Clonetics (catalog number CC-2519; BioWhittaker Inc., Walkersville, MD). The cells were cultured at 37°C, 5% CO<sub>2</sub> in endothelial growth medium (EGM; catalog number CC-3124; Clonetics) supplemented with

-113-

u0.4% bovine brain extract with heparin, 2% fetal bovine serum, 1 µg/mL hydrocortisone, 10 ng/mL epidermal growth factor, 50 ng/mL amphotericin-B and 50 µg/mL gentamicin sulfate. All subsequent cell manipulations were carried out according to the manufacturer's instructions. HUVEC were allowed to grow 5 to about 90% confluent, then briefly washed with 1 x phosphate buffered saline.

**Isolation of total RNA, and purification and enrichment of polyA + RNA**

HUVEC were lysed in Trizol reagent (catalog number 15596; Life Technologies, Rockville, MD) and total RNA was isolated according to the manufacturer's protocol. The concentration of total RNA was estimated from 10 absorbance reading at 260 nm. PolyA + RNAs were purified and enriched using oligo-dT beads (catalog number 70061; Oligotex, Qiagen, Chatsworth, CA).

**Reverse-transcription and polymerase chain reaction (PCR)**

HUVEC polyA + RNAs were converted to single-stranded cDNA (sscDNA) by reverse transcription using ProSTAR first-strand RT-PCR kit (catalog number 15 200420; Stratagene, La Jolla, CA) and SuperScript II RNase H- reverse transcriptase (catalog number 18064-022; Life Technologies). An aliquot of HUVEC sscDNA (4 µL) was subjected to PCR using 2 µM each of the sense and anti-sense degenerate oligonucleotide primers and Taq polymerase. The sequence of the sense primer was 5'-TGGRT(I)VT(I)WS(I)GC(I)RC(I)CAYTG-3' 20 SEQ ID NO. 9 and that of the anti-sense was 5'-(I)GG(I)CC(I)CC(I)SWRTC(I)CCYT(I)RCA(I)GHRTC-3' SEQ ID No. 10, where R = A,G; V = G,A,C; W = A,T; S = G,C; Y = C,T; H = A,T,C. The primer sequences correspond to two highly conserved regions in all serine proteases and amplify PCR products ranging from 400 to 500 base pairs.

25 **Clone screening and sequencing**

The PCR products were separated on a 2% agarose gel and purified using a gel extraction kit (catalog number 28706; QIAquick gel extraction kit; Qiagen). The purified DNA fragments were ligated into TA vectors (catalog number K4500-01; TOPO-TA cloning kit, Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA). After transformation 30 into E. coli cells, plasmid DNAs were isolated and analyzed by digestion with EcoRI restriction enzyme. Clones that had insert DNAs were further characterized by sequencing using a fluorescent dye-based DNA sequencing

-114-

method (catalog number 4303149; BigDye terminator cycle sequencing kit with AmpliTaq DNA polymerase; Perkin Elmer, Lincoln, CA). A total of 170 clones were sequenced and analyzed. All sequences were analyzed by a multiple nucleotide sequence alignment algorithm (blastn) to identify identical or closely related cDNA clones deposited in GenBank (NCBI, Bethesda, MD). Those that did not show significant homology were further analyzed using blastx, which compares the six-frame conceptual translation products of a nucleotide sequence (both strands) against a protein sequence database (SwissProt). Two clones yielded a cDNA fragment that encodes a serine protease. One of these clones (H117) encodes the protease domain of an endothelial serine protease, the protein herein designated endotheliase 1.

**Gene expression profile of the endothelial serine protease endotheliase 1**

To obtain information regarding the tissue distribution of endotheliase 1, the DNA insert of clone H117 was used to probe an RNA blot composed of 76 different human tissues (catalog number 7775-1; human multiple tissue expression (MTE) array; CLONTECH, Palo Alto, CA). Significant expression was observed in the esophagus, with minor expression levels in the stomach, salivary gland, pancreas, prostate, bladder, trachea and uterus. Northern analysis using RNA blots (catalog numbers 7765-1 & 7782-1; human muscle and digestive system multiple tissue northern (MTN) blots; CLONTECH) confirmed that the expression was restricted to the esophagus. Two transcripts (approximately 1.7 and 2 kb) were detected in the esophagus.

**Presence of endotheliase 1 in human umbilical vein endothelial cells**

Single-stranded cDNA clones were reverse-transcribed from polyA + RNAs isolated and purified from human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC) using Superscript II (Life Technologies, Rockville, MD) and oligo-dT primer. Endotheliase 1-specific primers (sense primer: 5'-CCTGCCAGATGGACTGCTTCCTTG-3' (SEQ ID No. 7) anti-sense primer: 5'-GGCATGCATCTGTTTCCCTCTAAGG-3' (SEQ ID NO. 8) were used to amplify a 390-bp fragment from the ssDNAs of HUVEC. To prevent non-specific amplification of other serine proteases, the primers were designed so that they hybridize outside of the highly conserved sequences common to all

-115-

trypsin-like serine proteases. RT-PCR of endotheliase 1 transcripts from HUVEC cells showed a ~400-bp DNA fragment plus another smaller, non-specific band after separation on a 2% agarose gel. The gel was blotted onto a positively charged nylon membrane and hybridized at 60°C with an endotheliase 1 cDNA

- 5 fragment isolated from the H117 clone using ExpressHyb(tm) hybridization solution (CLONTECH). After washing at high stringency (68°C in 0.1x SSC; 0.1% SDS), a strong positive signal was observed on the ~400-bp fragment only, indicating that this band corresponds to the endotheliase 1 cDNA, and that HUVEC cells express endotheliase 1.

10 **5'- and 3'- rapid amplification of cDNA ends (RACE)**

To obtain cDNA that encodes the entire protease domain of endotheliase 1, 5'- and 3'-RACE reactions were performed. Since the presence of the transcript was detected in the prostate, a human prostate Marathon-Ready cDNA (catalog # 7418-1; Clontech) was used to isolate the 5' and 3' ends of

- 15 the cDNA encoding endotheliase 1. Marathon-Ready cDNAs are specifically made for RACE reactions. Two gene specific primers were used: 5'-GGCATGCATCTGTTTCTTAAGG-3' (SEQ ID No. 8) for 5'-RACE reaction and 5'-CCTGCCAGATGGACTGCTTCCTTG-3' (SEQ ID No. 7) for 3'-RACE reaction.

- 20 Two fragments, approximately 1.2 kbp and 1.4 kbp, were isolated that corresponded to the missing 5' and 3' end sequences. These fragments were confirmed by Southern analysis using the internal cDNA fragment as probe and by DNA sequence analysis.

**Sequence analysis**

- 25 All derived DNA and protein sequences were analyzed using MacVector (version 6.5; Oxford Molecular Ltd., Madison, WI). The cDNA encoding the protease domain of endotheliase1 is composed of 696 base pairs (SEQ ID No. 1) which translate to a 232-amino acid protein sequence (SEQ ID No. 2).

-116-

- The cDNA encoding this protein was cloned into a derivative of the *Pichia pastoris* vector pPIC9K (available from Invitrogen; see SEQ ID NO. 21). Plasmid pPIC9k features include the 5' AOX1 promoter fragment at 1-948; 5' AOX1 primer site at 855-875; alpha-factor secretion signal(s) at 949-1218;
- 5 alpha-factor primer site at 1152-1172; multiple cloning site at 1192-1241; 3' AOX1 primer site at 1327-1347; 3' AOX1 transcription termination region at 1253-1586; HIS4 ORF at 4514-1980; kanamycin resistance gene at 5743-4928; 3' AOX1 fragment at 6122-6879; ColE1 origin at 7961-7288; and the ampicillin resistance gene at 8966-8106. The plasmid used herein is
- 10 derived from pPIC9K by eliminating the Xhol site in the kanamycin resistance gene and the resulting vector is herein designated pPIC9KX.

For expression in *Pichia pastoris*, the cDNA encoding the protease domain was amplified using the same pair of gene-specific primers, except that restriction sites were introduced at the 5' ends of each primer to facilitate

15 cloning into the Pichia vector, pPIC9KX. The primers were as follows:

forward (SEQ ID No. 23)  
5'-TCTCTCGAGAAAAGAACATCGTTGGTGGACAGAAGTAGAAGAG-3'; and  
Reverse (SEQ ID NO. 24)  
5'-ATTCGCGGCCGCTTAGATACCAGTTTGAAAGTAATCCA-3'.

20 **EXAMPLE 2**

**CLONING AND EXPRESSION OF ENDOTHELIASE 2**

**Identification of endotheliase 2**

- The UniGene (<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/UniGene>) tool for data mining at the National Center for Biotechnology Information was searched for a serine
- 25 protease sequence cluster. A UniGene cluster is a non-redundant set of sequences that represents a unique human, mouse, or rat gene. The database includes well-characterized genes and expressed sequence tag (EST) sequences, including information regarding tissue distribution and chromosomal map location.
- 30 A UniGene cluster (Hs.245327/Hs.266308) was identified that had ESTs which were weakly similar to the human serine protease, hepsin (accession number P05981). This cluster contains 12 EST sequences that were expressed

-117-

in the ovary, placenta, uterus, breast and colon. One EST sequence (AI909842) derived from human breast carcinoma was used to isolate the full-length cDNA encoding this novel serine protease (hereafter referred to as endotheliase 2). The sequence contained in AI909842 did not show 100% identity to any known 5 serine protease sequence deposited in GenBank. Using blastx to identify homologous protein sequences deposited in the protein database, the closest matches were found to be hepsin (53 to 55%), human TMPRSS2 (47%), human MTSP2 (47%), and human plasma kallikrein B1 precursor (47%). A search of the unfinished human genome database (High Throughput Genomic Sequences 10 (HTGS)) using blastn indicated that the gene encoding endotheliase 2 is located in chromosome 11 (11q23).

**5'- and 3'- rapid amplification of cDNA ends (RACE)**

To obtain a full-length cDNA clone encoding endotheliase 2, 5'- and 3'-RACE reactions were performed. The Marathon-Ready cDNA library from 15 human mammary carcinoma (GI-101; CLONTECH; catalog number 7493-1) was used to isolate the 5' and 3' ends of the cDNA encoding endotheliase 2. Marathon-Ready cDNAs are specifically made for RACE reactions. Two gene specific primers were used: 5'-GGAGGCAAGCAGGGTGGATGTGAGCGGAC-3' (SEQ ID NO. 11) for 5'-RACE reaction and 20 5'-CGGATCGTGGAGGGCGCTGGCCTC-3' (SEQ ID NO. 12) for 3'-RACE reaction. A ~ 1.5 kbp cDNA fragment was obtained from the 5'-RACE reaction. The initial 3'-RACE reaction, however, did not produce any fragment. A nested PCR was used on the initial 3'-RACE reaction products to obtain the rest of the 3' end of endotheliase 2. The nested 3' gene-specific primer used was 25 5'-CAAGTGAGTCTGCACTTGGCACCC-3' SEQ ID NO. 13 and produced a ~ 1.2 kbp cDNA fragment. The fragments were subcloned into pCR2.1-TOPO TA cloning vector (Invitrogen, Carlsbad, CA). The resulting clones were analyzed by Southern analysis using the cDNA insert of EST clone AI909842 as a probe and by DNA sequence analysis.

**30 Domain organization of endotheliase 2**

Sequence analysis of the translated endotheliase 2 coding sequence indicated that endotheliase 2 is a type-II membrane-type serine protease. It has

-118-

a transmembrane domain at the N-terminus, followed by a single low density lipoprotein-A receptor domain and a single scavenger-receptor cysteine-rich domain. The C-terminus contains the trypsin-like serine protease domain characterized by the presence of the catalytic triad residues (histidine, aspartate and serine) in 3 highly-conserved regions of the catalytic domain. In addition, three repetitive sequences composed of ASPAGTPPPGRASP (SEQ ID NO. 14) are found just before the transmembrane domain, and represent a sequence motif for N-myristoylation modification.

10       **PCR amplification of cDNA encoding full-length protease domain of endotheliase 2**

To obtain the cDNA fragment encoding the protease domain of endotheliase 2, an end-to-end PCR amplification using gene-specific primers and the Marathon-Ready cDNA library from human mammary carcinoma was used. The two primers used were: 5'-CGGATCGTGGGAGGGCGCTGGCCTCG -3' (SEQ ID NO. 15) for the 5' end, and 5'-CAGCAGGCCAGCTGGTTAGGATTTATGAATCGCAC-3' (SEQ ID NO. 16) for the 3' end. The 5' primer contained the sequence that encodes the start of the endotheliase 2 protease domain (RIVGGALAS SEQ ID NO. 17). The 3' primer corresponds to the sequence flanking the stop codon (underlined). A ~730-bp fragment was amplified, subcloned into pCR2.1-TOPO TA cloning vector and sequenced.

For expression in *Pichia pastoris*, the cDNA encoding the protease domain was amplified using the same pair of gene-specific primers, except that restriction sites (Xhol site and NotI site for 5' and 3' primers, respectively) were introduced at the 5' ends of each primer to facilitate cloning into the *Pichia* vector, pPIC9KX. The primers were as follows:  
forward (SEQ ID NO. 25)  
5'-TCTCTCGAGAAAAGAATCGTGGGAGGGCGCTGGCCTCG-3'  
reverse (SEQ ID No. 26)  
30       5'-ATAGCGGCCGCTGGTTAGGATTTATGAATCGCACCTCGC-3'.

-119-

**Gene expression profile and transcript size of endotheliase 2 in normal and tumor tissues**

- To obtain information regarding the gene expression profile of the endotheliase 2 transcript, the cDNA insert of EST clone AI909842 was used to probe an RNA dot blot composed of 76 different human tissues (human multiple tissue expression (MTE) array; catalog number 7775-1; CLONTECH, Palo Alto, CA) and a human tissue northen blot (human 12-lane multiple tissue northern (MTN) blot; catalog number 7780-1; CLONTECH). The RNA dot blot showed strong signals in placenta, pancreas, thyroid gland, liver and lung. Moderate signals were observed in mammary gland, salivary gland, kidney, trachea, esophagus, appendix, heart and fetal lung. Weak signals were seen in several other tissues. endotheliase 2 is also expressed in several tumor cell lines including leukemia K-562 > HeLa S3 = Burkitt's lymphomas (Raji and Daudi) = colorectal adenocarcinoma (SW480) = lung carcinoma (A549) = leukemia MOLT-4 = leukemia HL-60.

Northern analysis detected several transcripts in the tissues tested with strong signals observed in the heart, skeletal muscle, kidney, liver and placenta. The predominant transcript had a size of ~3 kb, while other transcripts were approximately 2.8 kb, 1.5 kb and 1 kb.

- PCR amplification of the endotheliase 2 transcript from cDNA libraries made from several human primary tumors xenografted in nude mice (human tumor multiple tissue cDNA panel, catalog number K1522-1, CLONTECH) was performed using endotheliase 2-specific primers. The endotheliase 2 transcript was detected in breast carcinoma (GI-101), lung carcinomas (LX-1 > GI-117), colon adenocarcinomas (GI-112 > CX-1), pancreatic adenocarcinoma (GI-103), and ovarian carcinoma (GI-102). The endotheliase 2 transcript was also detected in LNCaP and PC-3 prostate cancer cell lines as well as in HT-1080 human fibrosarcoma cell line.

**Presence of endotheliase 2 in endothelial cells**

- Single-stranded cDNAs were reverse-transcribed from polyA + RNAs isolated and purified from human umbilical vein endothelial cells (HUVEC) and human lung microvascular endothelial cells (HMVEC-L) using Superscript II (Life

-120-

Technologies, Rockville, MD) and oligo-dT primer. endotheliase 2-specific primers (sense primer: 5'-TCCAGGAAAGCCTCCACAGGTC-3' SEQ ID NO. 18; anti-sense primer: 5'-GGAGGCAAGCAGGGTGGATGTGAGCGGAC-3' SEQ ID NO. 19) were used to amplify a 422-bp fragment from the sscDNAs of  
5 endothelial cells. This 422-bp fragment spans the scavenger receptor cysteine-rich domain and the serine protease domain. RT-PCR of endotheliase 2 transcripts from HUVEC and HMVEC-L cells showed a ~420-bp DNA fragment plus other non-specific bands after separation on a 2% agarose gel. The gel was blotted onto a positively charged nylon membrane and hybridized at 60°C with  
10 an endotheliase 2 cDNA originally isolated from human mammary gland carcinoma using ExpressHyb(tm) hybridization solution (CLONTECH). After washing at high stringency (68°C in 0.1x SSC; 0.1% SDS), a strong positive signal was observed on the ~420-bp fragment only, indicating that this DNA fragment corresponds to the endotheliase 2 cDNA, and that HUVEC and  
15 HMVEC-L cells express endotheliase 2.

**Presence of another form of endotheliase 2 in placenta and LNCaP cells.**

Since multiple endotheliase 2 mRNAs were present in placenta, another 3'-RACE reaction was performed using a endotheliase 2-specific primer (5'-TTCCTCCGGGAGGTGCAGGTCAATC-3' SEQ ID NO. 20). Several products  
20 were observed, but only two fragments (~2.2 kbp and ~1 kbp) showed strong hybridization with the endotheliase 2 probe. Upon subcloning and sequence analysis, the longer fragment showed sequence identity to the endotheliase 2 cDNA initially isolated from human mammary carcinoma. The sequence of the shorter fragment showed sequence identity to that of the human mammary  
25 carcinoma-derived endotheliase 2 in all but the last 24 bp of the coding region. Replacing these 24 bp was a 402-bp fragment which extended the coding region by an additional 134 amino acids. Interestingly, another transmembrane domain is found within this additional protein sequence. Using a set of endotheliase 2 primers (one primer common to both forms and the other one was specific to  
30 each form), the human mammary carcinoma and LNCaP cDNA libraries were screened for the presence of either or both forms. After subcloning and sequence analysis, the results showed that mammary breast carcinoma only

-121-

expressed the mRNA encoding the shorter protein (endotheliase 2-S), while LNCaP only expressed the longer form (endotheliase 2-L).

**Sequence analysis**

Endotheliase 2-encoding DNA and the encoded protein were analyzed 5 using MacVector (version 6.5; Oxford Molecular Ltd., Madison, WI). The ORF of endotheliase 2-S is composed of 1,689 bp which translate to a 562-amino acid protein, while the ORF of endotheliase 2-L is composed of 2,067 bp which translate to a 688-amino acid protein. The cDNA encoding the protease domain in endotheliase 2-S is composed of 729 bp which translate to a 242-amino acid 10 protein sequence, while that of endotheliase 2-L is composed of 1,107 bp which translate to a 368-amino acid protein sequence. The nucleic acid sequences and the protein sequences of endotheliase 2-S and endotheliase 2-L are set forth in SEQ ID Nos. 3-6. SEQ ID NO. 3 sets forth the nucleic acid sequence of endotheliase 2-S; SEQ ID NO. 4 endotheliase 2-S encoded protein; SEQ ID NO. 5 15 sets forth the nucleic acid sequence of Endotheliase 2-L; and SEQ ID NO. 6 sets forth the Endotheliase 2-L encoded protein.

**EXAMPLE 3**

**High throughput assay for identification of candidate angiogenesis modulators**

**Assay for identifying inhibitors of Endotheliase 1**

20 The ability of test compounds to act as inhibitors of Endotheliase-1 (ET1) catalytic activity was assessed in an amidolytic assay. The inhibitor-induced inhibition of amidolytic activity by the recombinant (rET1) expressed in *Pichia*, as measured by IC<sub>50</sub> values was assessed.

The assay buffer was HBSA (10mM Hepes, 150mM sodium chloride, pH 25 7.4, 0.1% bovine serum albumin). All reagents were from Sigma Chemical Co. (St. Louis, MO), unless otherwise indicated. Two IC<sub>50</sub> assays at 30-minute (a 30-minute preincubation of test compound and enzyme) and at 0-minutes (no preincubation of test compound and enzyme) were conducted. For the IC<sub>50</sub> assay at 30-minute, the following reagents were combined in appropriate wells 30 of a Corning microtiter plate: 50 microliters of HBSA, 50 microliters of the test compound, diluted (covering a broad concentration range) in HBSA (or HBSA alone for uninhibited velocity measurement), and 50 microliters of the rET-1

-122-

- (Corvas International) diluted in buffer, yielding a final enzyme concentration of 250 pM. Following a 30-minute incubation at ambient temperature, the assay was initiated by the addition of 50 microliters of the substrate Spectrozyme tPA (Methylsulfonyl-D-cyclohexyltyrosyl-L-glycyl-L-arginine-p-nitroaniline acetate, 5 obtained from American Diagnostica, Inc. (Greenwich, CT) and reconstituted in deionized water, followed by dilution in HBSA prior to the assay) were added to the wells, yielding a final volume of 200 microliters and a final substrate concentration of 300  $\mu$ M (about 1.5-times Km ).

For the IC50 assay at 0-minute, the same reagents were combined: 50 10 microliters of HBSA, 50 microliters of the test compound, diluted (covering the identical concentration range) in HBSA (or HBSA alone for uninhibited velocity measurement), and 50 microliters of the substrate Spectrozyme tPA . The assay was initiated by the addition of 50 microliters of rET-1. The final concentrations of all components were identical in both IC50 assays (at 30- and 0-minute 15 incubations).

The initial velocity of chromogenic substrate hydrolysis was measured in both assays by the change of absorbance at 405 nM using a Thermo Max<sub>2</sub> Kinetic Microplate Reader (Molecular Devices) over a 5 minute period, in which less than 5% of the added substrate was used. The concentration of added 20 inhibitor, which caused a 50% decrease in the initial rate of hydrolysis was defined as the respective IC50 value in each of the two assays (30-and 0-minute).

#### **Assay for identifying inhibitors of Endotheliase 2**

Test compounds for inhibition of the protease activity of the protease 25 domain of endotheliase-2 was assayed in Costar 96 well tissue culture plates (Corning NY). Approximately 2-3 nM endotheliase 2 was mixed with varying concentrations of inhibitor in 29.2 mM Tris, pH 8.4, 29.2 mM imidazole, 217 mM NaCl (100 mL final volume), and allowed to incubate at room temperature for 30 minutes. 400 mM substrate S 2765 (DiaPharma, Westchester, OH) was 30 added, and the reaction was monitored in a SpectraMAX Plus microplate reader (Molecular Devices, Sunnyvale CA) by following the change in absorbance at 405 nm for 1 hour at 37° C.

-123-

Since modifications will be apparent to those of skill in this art, it is intended that this invention be limited only by the scope of the appended claims.

-124-

**WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:**

1. A substantially purified protein, comprising the protease domain of an endotheliase protein or a protein that is a catalytically active portion thereof, wherein:
  - 5 the endotheliase protease domain portion of the protein consists essentially of a sequence of amino acids that comprises the protease domain or a catalytically active portion thereof; and  
an endotheliase is an endothelial cell transmembrane protease.
  2. The substantially purified protein of claim 1 that consists  
10 essentially of the protease domain of an endotheliase protein or a catalytically active portion thereof.
  3. The substantially purified protein of claim 1 or 2, wherein the endotheliase is endotheliase 1 or 2.
  4. The substantially purified protein of claim 3, wherein the protease  
15 domain comprises the sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID No. 2 or amino acids 320-688 of SEQ ID No. 4, or amino acids 320-562 of SEQ ID No. 6, or amino acids 190-424 of SEQ ID No. 22 or a contiguous portion thereof that exhibits protease activity.
  5. A substantially purified endotheliase 2 protein or a protein that is a  
20 catalytically active portion thereof.
  6. The endotheliase protein or catalytically active portion thereof of  
claim 5 that is an endotheliase 2-L or is an endotheliase 2-S.
  7. A protein of any of claims 1-6 that specifically binds to an  
antibody that specifically binds to a protease domain of a protein comprising the  
25 sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID No. 2, 4 or 6.
  8. A protein of claim 1 that has at least about 40%, 60%, 80% or  
90% sequence identity with a protease domain protein that comprises the  
sequence of amino acids set forth in SEQ ID No. 2 or amino acids 320-688 of  
SEQ ID No. 4, or amino acids 320-562 of SEQ ID No. 6, or amino acids 190-424  
30 of SEQ ID No. 22 or a contiguous portion thereof that exhibits protease activity.
  9. A nucleic acid molecule, comprising a sequence of nucleotides that  
encodes the protein of any of claim 1-9.

-125-

10. A nucleic acid molecule that encodes an endotheliase protein or the protease domain of an endotheliase or catalytically active portion of the protease domain and that hybridizes under conditions of medium stringency along its full length to the nucleic acid molecule of claim 9.
- 5 11. A nucleic acid molecule that encodes an endotheliase protein or catalytically active portion thereof and that hybridizes under conditions of high stringency along its full length to the nucleic acid molecule of claim 8.
12. A vector comprising the nucleic acid molecule of any of claims 9-11.
- 10 13. The vector of claim 12 that is an expression vector.
14. The vector of claim 12 or 13 that includes a sequence of nucleotides that direct secretion of any protein encoded by a sequence of nucleotides operatively linked thereto.
- 15 15. The vector of any of claims 12-14 that is a *Pichia* vector.
16. A cell, comprising the vector of any of claims 12-14.
17. The cell of claim 16 that is a prokaryotic cell.
18. The cells of claim 16 that is a eukaryotic cell.
19. The cell of claim 16 that is selected from among a bacterial cell, a yeast cell, a yeast cell, a plant cell, an insect cell and an animal cell.
- 20 20. The cell of claim 16 that is a mammalian cell.
21. A cell of any of claim 16-20, wherein the endotheliase includes a transmembrane domain and a protease domain and is expressed in the cell as a transmembrane protein, wherein, if the cell is an endothelial cell, the endotheliase is heterologous thereto.
- 25 22. The cell of claim 21, wherein the endotheliase comprises the sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID Nos. 2, 4, 6 and 22.
23. The cell of claim 21, wherein the endotheliase has at least about 90% sequence identity to the sequence of amino acids set forth in any of SEQ ID Nos. 2, 4, 6 and 22.

-126-

24. A method for producing an endotheliase protein or endotheliase protease domain protein, comprising:

culturing the cell of any of claims 16-19 under conditions whereby the encoded endotheliase protein or endotheliase protease domain protein is

5 expressed by the cell; and

recovering the expressed protein.

25. An antisense nucleic acid molecule that comprises at least 14 contiguous nucleotides or modified nucleotides complementary to the coding portion of a nucleic acid molecule of claim 9.

10 26. The antisense nucleic acid molecule of claim 1, wherein the contiguous nucleotides or modified nucleotides are complementary to a contiguous sequence of nucleotides in the protease domain of an endotheliase.

27. The antisense nucleic acid molecule of claim 26, wherein the endotheliase is an endotheliase 1 or endotheliase 2.

15 28. An antibody that specifically binds to a protease domain of an endotheliase of any of claims 1-8, or a fragment or derivative of the antibody containing a binding domain thereof, wherein the antibody is a polyclonal antibody or a monoclonal antibody.

20 29. A kit, comprising a protein of any of claims 1-8 or a nucleic acid molecule encoding the protein, or vector comprising the nucleic acid, or a cell comprising the vector, and reagents for diagnostic, therapeutic or drug screening.

30 30. A conjugate, comprising:

a) a protein of any of claims 1-8, and

25 b) a targeting agent linked to the protein directly or via a linker.

31. The conjugate of claim 30, wherein the targeting agent permits

i) affinity isolation or purification of the conjugate;

ii) attachment of the conjugate to a surface;

iii) detection of the conjugate; or

30 iv) targeted delivery to a selected tissue or cell.

-127-

32. A combination, comprising:
  - a) an inhibitor of the activity of an endotheliase or protease domain thereof; and
  - b) an another treatment or agent selected from anti-tumor and anti-  
5 angiogenic treatments or agents.
33. The combination of claim 32, wherein the endotheliase or protease domain thereof comprises a protein of any of claims 1-8.
34. The combination of claim 32 or claim 33, wherein the endotheliase inhibitor and the anti-angiogenic agent are formulated in a single pharmaceutical  
10 composition or each is formulated in separate pharmaceutical compositions.
35. The combination of any of claims 32-34, wherein the endotheliase inhibitor is selected from antibodies and antisense oligonucleotides.
36. A solid support comprising two or more proteins of claim 1 linked thereto either directly or via a linker.  
15
37. The support of claim 32, wherein the proteins comprise an array.
38. A method for identifying compounds that modulate the activity of an endotheliase, comprising:
  - contacting an endotheliase or protease domain of an endotheliase with a substrate proteolytically cleaved by the endotheliase, and, either simultaneously,  
20 before or after, adding a test compound or plurality thereof;
  - measuring the amount of substrate cleaved in the presence of the test compound; and
  - selecting compounds that change the amount cleaved compared to a control, whereby compounds that modulate the activity of the endotheliase are  
25 identified.
39. A method of identifying a compound that specifically binds to an endotheliase or a protease domain thereof, comprising:
  - contacting the endotheliase or protease domain with a test compound or plurality thereof under conditions conducive to binding thereof; and  
30
  - identifying compounds that specifically binds to the endotheliase or to the protease domain thereof.

-128-

40. The method of claim 38 or claim 39, wherein the endotheliase or protease domain thereof is a protein of any of claims 1-8.

41. The method of any of claims 38-40, wherein the endotheliase or protease domain of an endotheliase is expressed on the surface of a cell.

5 42. The method of any of claims 38-40, wherein the endotheliase or protease domain thereof is linked either directly or indirectly via a linker to a solid support.

43. The method of any of claims 38-40, wherein the compounds are small molecules, peptides, peptidomimetics, natural products, antibodies or  
10 fragments thereof.

44. The method of any of claim claims 38-43, wherein a plurality of the test substances are screened for simultaneously.

45. The method of any of claims 38-44, wherein the change in the amount cleaved is assessed by comparing the amount cleaved in the presence of  
15 the test compound with the amount in the absence of the test compound.

46. The method of any of claims 38-45, wherein a plurality of endotheliases or protease domains thereof are linked to a solid support.

47. Use of an endotheliase protein or protease domain thereof for the treatment or diagnosis of disorders associated with aberrant angiogenesis or  
20 undesired neovascularization.

48. The use of claim 47, wherein the endotheliase or protease domain thereof is a protein of any of claims 1-8.

49. A method for treating or preventing a disease or disorder associated with undesired and/or uncontrolled angiogenesis or  
25 neovascularization, in a mammal, comprising administering to a mammal an effective amount of an inhibitor of an endotheliase.

50. The method of claim 49, wherein the endotheliase comprises a protein of any of claims 1-8.

51. The method of claim 49 or 50, wherein the mammal is a human.

30 52. The method of any of claims 49-51, further comprising administering an anti-angiogenic treatment or agent, wherein the anti-angiogenic

-129-

treatment or agent is administered prior to administration of the endotheliase, subsequent to, or simultaneously therewith.

53. The method of any of claims 49-52, wherein the endotheliase inhibitor is selected from the group consisting of an antibody or a fragment or 5 derivative thereof containing the binding region thereof against the endotheliase, an antisense nucleic acid encoding the endotheliase, and a nucleic acid comprising at least a portion of a gene encoding the endotheliase into which a heterologous nucleotide sequence has been inserted such that the heterologous sequence inactivates the biological activity of at least a portion of the gene 10 encoding the endotheliase, in which the portion of the gene encoding the endotheliase flanks the heterologous sequence and promotes homologous recombination with a gene encoding the endotheliase.

54. The method of any of claims 49-53, wherein the undesired angiogenesis is associated with disorders selected from the group consisting of 15 solid neoplasms, vascular malformations and cardiovascular disorders, chronic inflammatory diseases and aberrant wound repairs, circulatory disorders, crest syndromes, dermatological disorders and ocular disorders.

55. The method of claim 54, wherein:  
the vascular malformations and cardiovascular disorders are selected from 20 the group consisting of angiofibroma, angioma, atherosclerosis, restenosis/reperfusion injury, arteriovenous malformations, hemangiomas and vascular adhesions, dyschondroplasia with vascular hamartomas (Fafucci's syndrome), hereditary hemorrhagic telangiectasia (Rendu-Osler-Weber syndrome) and Von Hippel Lindau syndrome;  
25 the chronic inflammatory diseases are selected from the group consisting of diabetes mellitus, hemophiliac joints, inflammatory bowel disease, nonhealing fractures, periodontitis (rapidly progressing and juvenile), psoriasis, rheumatoid arthritis, venous stasis ulcers, granulations-burns, hypertrophic scars, liver cirrhosis, osteoradionecrosis, postoperative adhesions, pyogenic granuloma and 30 systemic sclerosis;

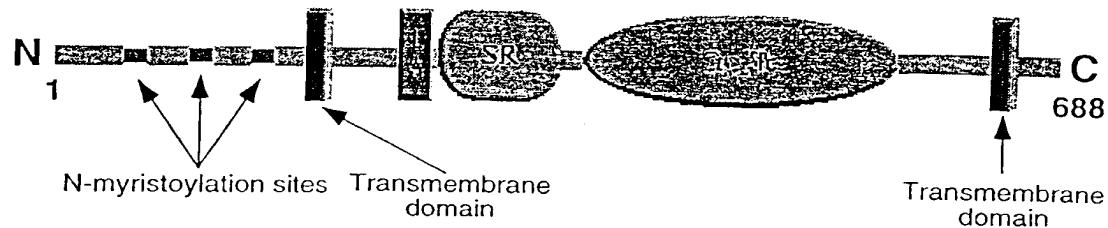
-130-

- the circulatory disorder is Raynaud's phenomenon;
- the crest syndromes are selected from the group consisting of calcinosis, esophageal, dyomotility, sclerodactyly and teangiectasis;
- the dermatological disorders are selected from the group consisting of
- 5 systemic vasculitis, scleroderma, pyoderma gangrenosum, vasculopathy, venous, arterial ulcers, Sturge-Weber syndrome, Port-wine stains, blue rubber bleb nevus syndrome, Klippel-Trenaunay-Weber syndrome and Osler-Weber-Rendu syndrome;
- the ocular disorders are selected from the group consisting of blindness
- 10 caused by ocular neovascular disease, corneal graft neovascularization, macular degeneration in the eye, neovascular glaucoma, trachoma, diabetic retinopathy, myopic degeneration, retinopathy of prematurity, retrobulbar fibroplasia and corneal neovascularization.
56. A recombinant non-human animal, wherein an endogenous gene of
- 15 an endotheliase has been deleted or inactivated by homologous recombination or insertional mutagenesis of the animal or an ancestor thereof.
57. A recombinant non-human animal of claim 56, wherein the endotheliase comprises a protein of any of claims 1-8.
58. A recombinant non-human animal of claim 56 or 57, wherein
- 20 inactivation is effected by recombination with a nucleic acid molecule of any of claims 9-11 that has been modified by a deletion, insertion or other mutation whereupon recombination the endogenous endotheliase is inactivated.
59. The recombinant non-human animal of any of claims 56-58, wherein the gene encoding an endotheliase or protease domain thereof is under
- 25 control of its native promoter.
60. The cell of claim 21, wherein the endotheliase is an endotheliase 1 or endotheliase 2.

1/1

## Domain organization of MTSP5

MTSP5-L



MTSP5-S

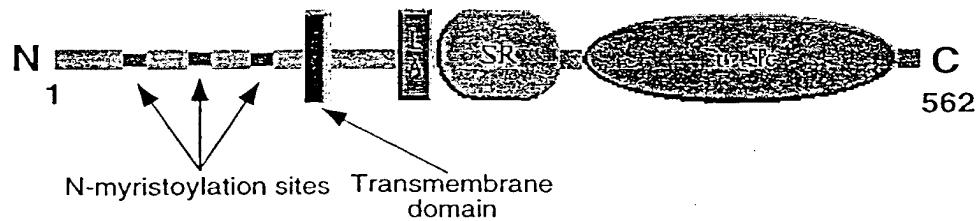


FIGURE 1

-1 of 20-

SEQUENCE LISTING

<110> Edwin L. Madison  
Edgar O. Ong  
Jiunn-Chern Yeh  
Corvas International, Inc.

<120> NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING ENDOTHELIASES, ENDOTHELIASES AND USES THEREOF

<130> 24745-1605PC

<140> TO BE ASSIGNED  
<141> Herewith

<150> 60/166,391  
<151> 1999-11-18

<150> 60/234,840  
<151> 2000-09-22

<160> 26

<170> PatentIn Ver. 2.0

<210> 1  
<211> 702  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapiens

<220>  
<221> CDS  
<222> (1)..(699)

<220>  
<223> cDNA encoding protease domain of endotheliase 1

<400> 1  
agg atc gtt ggt ggg aca gaa gta gaa gag ggt gaa tgg ccc tgg cag 48  
Arg Ile Val Gly Gly Thr Glu Val Glu Glu Gly Glu Trp Pro Trp Gln  
1 5 10 15

gct agc ctg cag tgg gat ggg agt cat cgc tgt gga gca acc tta att 96  
Ala Ser Leu Gln Trp Asp Gly Ser His Arg Cys Gly Ala Thr Leu Ile  
20 25 30

aat gcc aca tgg ctt gtg agt gct gct cac tgt ttt aca aca tat aag 144  
Asn Ala Thr Trp Leu Val Ser Ala Ala His Cys Phe Thr Thr Tyr Lys  
35 40 45

aac cct gcc aga tgg act gct tcc ttt gga gta aca ata aaa cct tcg 192  
Asn Pro Ala Arg Trp Thr Ala Ser Phe Gly Val Thr Ile Lys Pro Ser  
50 55 60

aaa atg aaa cgg ggt ctc cgg aga ata att gtc cat gaa aaa tac aaa 240  
Lys Met Lys Arg Gly Leu Arg Arg Ile Ile Val His Glu Lys Tyr Lys  
65 70 75 80

cac cca tca cat gac tat gat att tct ctt gca gag ctt tct agc cct 288  
His Pro Ser His Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ser Leu Ala Glu Leu Ser Ser Pro  
85 90 95

-2 of 20-

gtt ccc tac aca aat gca gta cat aga gtt tgt ctc cct gat gca tcc	336
Val Pro Tyr Thr Asn Ala Val His Arg Val Cys Leu Pro Asp Ala Ser	
100	105
110	
tat gag ttt caa cca ggt gat gtg atg ttt gtg aca gga ttt gga gca	384
Tyr Glu Phe Gln Pro Gly Asp Val Met Phe Val Thr Gly Phe Gly Ala	
115	120
125	
ctg aaa aat gat ggt tac agt caa aat cat ctt cga caa gca cag gtg	432
Leu Lys Asn Asp Gly Tyr Ser Gln Asn His Leu Arg Gln Ala Gln Val	
130	135
140	
act ctc ata gac gct aca act tgc aat gaa cct caa gct tac aat gac	480
Thr Leu Ile Asp Ala Thr Thr Cys Asn Glu Pro Gln Ala Tyr Asn Asp	
145	150
155	160
gcc ata act cct aga atg tta tgt gct ggc tcc tta gaa gga aaa aca	528
Ala Ile Thr Pro Arg Met Leu Cys Ala Gly Ser Leu Glu Gly Lys Thr	
165	170
175	
gat gca tgc cag ggt gac tct gga gga cca ctg gtt agt tca gat gct	576
Asp Ala Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Ser Ser Asp Ala	
180	185
190	
aga gat atc tgg tac ctt gct gga ata gtg agc tgg gga gat gaa tgt	624
Arg Asp Ile Trp Tyr Leu Ala Gly Ile Val Ser Trp Gly Asp Glu Cys	
195	200
205	
gcg aaa ccc aac aag cct ggt gtt tat act aga gtt acg gcc ttg cg	672
Ala Lys Pro Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Arg Val Thr Ala Leu Arg	
210	215
220	
gac tgg att act tca aaa act ggt atc taa	702
Asp Trp Ile Thr Ser Lys Thr Gly Ile	
225	230
<210> 2	
<211> 233	
<212> PRT	
<213> Homo sapiens	
<220>	
<223> protease domain of endotheliase 1	
<400> 2	
Arg Ile Val Gly Gly Thr Glu Val Glu Glu Gly Glu Trp Pro Trp Gln	
1	5
10	15
Ala Ser Leu Gln Trp Asp Gly Ser His Arg Cys Gly Ala Thr Leu Ile	
20	25
30	
Asn Ala Thr Trp Leu Val Ser Ala Ala His Cys Phe Thr Thr Tyr Lys	
35	40
45	
Asn Pro Ala Arg Trp Thr Ala Ser Phe Gly Val Thr Ile Lys Pro Ser	
50	55
60	
Lys Met Lys Arg Gly Leu Arg Arg Ile Ile Val His Glu Lys Tyr Lys	
65	70
75	80
His Pro Ser His Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ser Leu Ala Glu Leu Ser Ser Pro	

**-3 of 20-**

85	90	95	
Val Pro Tyr Thr Asn Ala Val His Arg Val Cys Leu Pro Asp Ala Ser			
100	105	110	
Tyr Glu Phe Gln Pro Gly Asp Val Met Phe Val Thr Gly Phe Gly Ala			
115	120	125	
Leu Lys Asn Asp Gly Tyr Ser Gln Asn His Leu Arg Gln Ala Gln Val			
130	135	140	
Thr Leu Ile Asp Ala Thr Thr Cys Asn Glu Pro Gln Ala Tyr Asn Asp			
145	150	155	160
Ala Ile Thr Pro Arg Met Leu Cys Ala Gly Ser Leu Glu Gly Lys Thr			
165	170	175	
Asp Ala Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Ser Ser Asp Ala			
180	185	190	
Arg Asp Ile Trp Tyr Leu Ala Gly Ile Val Ser Trp Gly Asp Glu Cys			
195	200	205	
Ala Lys Pro Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Arg Val Thr Ala Leu Arg			
210	215	220	
Asp Trp Ile Thr Ser Lys Thr Gly Ile			
225	230		
<210> 3			
<211> 1689			
<212> DNA			
<213> Homo Sapien			
<220>			
<221> CDS			
<222> (1)...(1689)			
<223> DNA encoding a transmembrane serine protease (Endotheliase 2-S) protein			
<400> 3			
atg gag agg gac agc cac ggg aat gca tct cca gca aga aca cct tca			48
Met Glu Arg Asp Ser His Gly Asn Ala Ser Pro Ala Arg Thr Pro Ser			
1	5	10	15
gct gga gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gct ggg aca cct cca ggc			96
Ala Gly Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr Pro Pro Gly			
20	25	30	
cgg gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gct ggg			144
Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly			
35	40	45	
aca cct ccg ggc cgg gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gct ggt aca			192
Thr Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr			
50	55	60	
cct cca ggc cgg gca tct cca gcc cgg gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct			240
Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser			
65	70	75	80
cca gcc ccg gca tct ccg gct ctg gca tca ctt tcc agg tcc tca tcc			288

-4 of 20-

Pro Ala Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Leu Ala Ser Leu Ser Arg Ser Ser Ser			
85	90	95	
ggc agg tca tca tcc gcc agg tca gcc tcg gtg aca acc tcc cca acc		336	
Gly Arg Ser Ser Ser Ala Arg Ser Ala Ser Val Thr Thr Ser Pro Thr			
100	105	110	
aga gtg tac ctt gtt aga gca aca cca gtg ggg gct gta ccc atc cga		384	
Arg Val Tyr Leu Val Arg Ala Thr Pro Val Gly Ala Val Pro Ile Arg			
115	120	125	
tca tct cct gcc agg tca gca cca gca acc agg gcc acc agg gag agc		432	
Ser Ser Pro Ala Arg Ser Ala Pro Ala Thr Arg Ala Thr Arg Glu Ser			
130	135	140	
cca ggt acg agc ctg ccc aag ttc acc tgg cg <sup>g</sup> gag ggc cag aag cag		480	
Pro Gly Thr Ser Leu Pro Lys Phe Thr Trp Arg Glu Gly Gln Lys Gln			
145	150	155	160
cta ccg ctc atc ggg tgc gtg ctc ctc att gcc ctg gtg gtt tcg		528	
Leu Pro Leu Ile Gly Cys Val Leu Leu Ile Ala Leu Val Val Ser			
165	170	175	
ctc atc atc ctc ttc cag ttc tgg cag ggc cac aca ggg atc agg tac		576	
Leu Ile Ile Leu Phe Gln Phe Trp Gln Gly His Thr Gly Ile Arg Tyr			
180	185	190	
aag gag cag agg gag agc tgt ccc aag cac gct gtt cgc tgt gac ggg		624	
Lys Glu Gln Arg Glu Ser Cys Pro Lys His Ala Val Arg Cys Asp Gly			
195	200	205	
gtg gtg gac tgc aag ctg aag agt gac gag ctg ggc tgc gtg agg ttt		672	
Val Val Asp Cys Lys Leu Lys Ser Asp Glu Leu Gly Cys Val Arg Phe			
210	215	220	
gac tgg gac aag tct ctg ctt aaa atc tac tct ggg tcc tcc cat cag		720	
Asp Trp Asp Lys Ser Leu Leu Lys Ile Tyr Ser Gly Ser Ser His Gln			
225	230	235	240
tgg ctt ccc atc tgt agc agc aac tgg aat gac tcc tac tca gag aag		768	
Trp Leu Pro Ile Cys Ser Ser Asn Trp Asn Asp Ser Tyr Ser Glu Lys			
245	250	255	
acc tgc cag cag ctg ggt ttc gag agt gct cac cgg aca acc gag gtt		816	
Thr Cys Gln Leu Gly Phe Glu Ser Ala His Arg Thr Glu Val			
260	265	270	
gcc cac agg gat ttt gcc aac agc ttc tca atc ttg aga tac aac tcc		864	
Ala His Arg Asp Phe Ala Asn Ser Phe Ser Ile Leu Arg Tyr Asn Ser			
275	280	285	
acc atc cag gaa agc ctc cac agg tct gaa tgc cct tcc cag cgg tat		912	
Thr Ile Gln Glu Ser Leu His Arg Ser Glu Cys Pro Ser Gln Arg Tyr			
290	295	300	
atc tcc ctc cag tgt tcc cac tgc gga ctg agg gcc atg acc ggg cgg		960	
Ile Ser Leu Gln Cys Ser His Cys Gly Leu Arg Ala Met Thr Gly Arg			
305	310	315	320
atc gtg gga ggg gcg ctg gcc tcg gat agc aag tgg cct tgg caa gtg		1008	
Ile Val Gly Gly Ala Leu Ala Ser Asp Ser Lys Trp Pro Trp Gln Val			
325	330	335	

-5 of 20-

agt ctg cac ttc ggc acc acc cac atc tgt gga ggc acg ctc att gac Ser Leu His Phe Gly Thr Thr His Ile Cys Gly Gly Thr Leu Ile Asp 340 345 350	1056
gcc cag tgg gtg ctc act gcc gcc cac tgc ttc ttc gtg acc cgg gag Ala Gln Trp Val Leu Thr Ala Ala His Cys Phe Phe Val Thr Arg Glu 355 360 365	1104
aag gtc ctg gag ggc tgg aag gtg tac gcg ggc acc agc aac ctg cac Lys Val Leu Glu Gly Trp Lys Val Tyr Ala Gly Thr Ser Asn Leu His 370 375 380	1152
cag ttg cct gag gca gcc tcc att gcc gag atc atc atc aac agc aat Gln Leu Pro Glu Ala Ala Ser Ile Ala Glu Ile Ile Ile Asn Ser Asn 385 390 395 400	1200
tac acc gat gag gag gac gac tat gac atc gcc ctc atg cgg ctg tcc Tyr Thr Asp Glu Asp Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ala Leu Met Arg Leu Ser 405 410 415	1248
aag ccc ctg acc ctg tcc gct cac atc cac cct gct tgc ctc ccc atg Lys Pro Leu Thr Leu Ser Ala His Ile His Pro Ala Cys Leu Pro Met 420 425 430	1296
cat gga cag acc ttt agc ctc aat gag acc tgc tgg atc aca ggc ttt His Gly Gln Thr Phe Ser Leu Asn Glu Thr Cys Trp Ile Thr Gly Phe 435 440 445	1344
ggc aag acc agg gag aca gat gac aag aca tcc ccc ttc ctc cgg gag Gly Lys Thr Arg Glu Thr Asp Asp Lys Thr Ser Pro Phe Leu Arg Glu 450 455 460	1392
gtg cag gtc aat ctc atc gac ttc aag aaa tgc aat gac tac ttg gtc Val Gln Val Asn Leu Ile Asp Phe Lys Lys Cys Asn Asp Tyr Leu Val 465 470 475 480	1440
tat gac agt tac ctt acc cca agg atg atg tgt gct ggg gac ctt cgt Tyr Asp Ser Tyr Leu Thr Pro Arg Met Met Cys Ala Gly Asp Leu Arg 485 490 495	1488
ggg ggc aga gac tcc tgc cag gga gac agc ggg ggg cct ctt gtc tgt Gly Gly Arg Asp Ser Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Cys 500 505 510	1536
gag cag aac aac cgc tgg tac ctg gca ggt gtc acc agc tgg ggc aca Glu Gln Asn Asn Arg Trp Tyr Leu Ala Gly Val Thr Ser Trp Gly Thr 515 520 525	1584
ggc tgt ggc cag aga aac aaa cct ggt gtg tac acc aaa gtg aca gaa Gly Cys Gly Gln Arg Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Lys Val Thr Glu 530 535 540	1632
gtt ctt ccc tgg att tac agc aag atg gag agc gag gtg cga ttc ata Val Leu Pro Trp Ile Tyr Ser Lys Met Glu Ser Glu Val Arg Phe Ile 545 550 555 560	1680
aaa tcc taa Lys Ser *	1689
<210> 4	
<211> 562	

-6 of 20-

<212> PRT  
 <213> homo sapien

<220>  
 <221> protease domain  
 <222> (321)..(562)

<400> 4  
 Met Glu Arg Asp Ser His Gly Asn Ala Ser Pro Ala Arg Thr Pro Ser  
 1 5 10 15  
 Ala Gly Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr Pro Pro Gly  
 20 25 30  
 Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly  
 35 40 45  
 Thr Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr  
 50 55 60  
 Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser  
 65 70 75 80  
 Pro Ala Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Leu Ala Ser Leu Ser Arg Ser Ser Ser  
 85 90 95  
 Gly Arg Ser Ser Ser Ala Arg Ser Ala Ser Val Thr Thr Ser Pro Thr  
 100 105 110  
 Arg Val Tyr Leu Val Arg Ala Thr Pro Val Gly Ala Val Pro Ile Arg  
 115 120 125  
 Ser Ser Pro Ala Arg Ser Ala Pro Ala Thr Arg Ala Thr Arg Glu Ser  
 130 135 140  
 Pro Gly Thr Ser Leu Pro Lys Phe Thr Trp Arg Glu Gly Gln Lys Gln  
 145 150 155 160  
 Leu Pro Leu Ile Gly Cys Val Leu Leu Ile Ala Leu Val Val Ser  
 165 170 175  
 Leu Ile Ile Leu Phe Gln Phe Trp Gln Gly His Thr Gly Ile Arg Tyr  
 180 185 190  
 Lys Glu Gln Arg Glu Ser Cys Pro Lys His Ala Val Arg Cys Asp Gly  
 195 200 205  
 Val Val Asp Cys Lys Leu Lys Ser Asp Glu Leu Gly Cys Val Arg Phe  
 210 215 220  
 Asp Trp Asp Lys Ser Leu Leu Lys Ile Tyr Ser Gly Ser Ser His Gln  
 225 230 235 240  
 Trp Leu Pro Ile Cys Ser Ser Asn Trp Asn Asp Ser Tyr Ser Glu Lys  
 245 250 255  
 Thr Cys Gln Gln Leu Gly Phe Glu Ser Ala His Arg Thr Thr Glu Val  
 260 265 270  
 Ala His Arg Asp Phe Ala Asn Ser Phe Ser Ile Leu Arg Tyr Asn Ser  
 275 280 285  
 Thr Ile Gln Glu Ser Leu His Arg Ser Glu Cys Pro Ser Gln Arg Tyr  
 290 295 300  
 Ile Ser Leu Gln Cys Ser His Cys Gly Leu Arg Ala Met Thr Gly Arg  
 305 310 315 320  
 Ile Val Gly Gly Ala Leu Ala Ser Asp Ser Lys Trp Pro Trp Gln Val  
 325 330 335  
 Ser Leu His Phe Gly Thr Thr His Ile Cys Gly Gly Thr Leu Ile Asp  
 340 345 350  
 Ala Gln Trp Val Leu Thr Ala Ala His Cys Phe Phe Val Thr Arg Glu  
 355 360 365  
 Lys Val Leu Glu Gly Trp Lys Val Tyr Ala Gly Thr Ser Asn Leu His  
 370 375 380  
 Gln Leu Pro Glu Ala Ala Ser Ile Ala Glu Ile Ile Ile Asn Ser Asn  
 385 390 395 400  
 Tyr Thr Asp Glu Asp Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ala Leu Met Arg Leu Ser  
 405 410 415  
 Lys Pro Leu Thr Leu Ser Ala His Ile His Pro Ala Cys Leu Pro Met  
 420 425 430

-7 of 20-

His Gly Gln Thr Phe Ser Leu Asn Glu Thr Cys Trp Ile Thr Gly Phe  
 435 440 445  
 Gly Lys Thr Arg Glu Thr Asp Asp Lys Thr Ser Pro Phe Leu Arg Glu  
 450 455 460  
 Val Gln Val Asn Leu Ile Asp Phe Lys Lys Cys Asn Asp Tyr Leu Val  
 465 470 475 480  
 Tyr Asp Ser Tyr Leu Thr Pro Arg Met Met Cys Ala Gly Asp Leu Arg  
 485 490 495  
 Gly Gly Arg Asp Ser Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Cys  
 500 505 510  
 Glu Gln Asn Asn Arg Trp Tyr Leu Ala Gly Val Thr Ser Trp Gly Thr  
 515 520 525  
 Gly Cys Gly Gln Arg Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Lys Val Thr Glu  
 530 535 540  
 Val Leu Pro Trp Ile Tyr Ser Lys Met Glu Ser Glu Val Arg Phe Ile  
 545 550 555 560  
 Lys Ser

<210> 5  
 <211> 2067  
 <212> DNA  
 <213> Homo Sapien

<220>  
 <221> CDS  
 <222> (1)...(2067)  
 <223> DNA sequence encoding a transmembrane serine  
 protease (endotheliase-L) protein

<400> 5		
atg gag agg gac cac ggg aat gca tct cca gca aga aca aca cct tca		48
Met Glu Arg Asp Ser His Gly Asn Ala Ser Pro Ala Arg Thr Pro Ser		
1 5 10 15		
gct gga gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gct ggg aca cct cca ggc		96
Ala Gly Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr Pro Pro Gly		
20 25 30		
cgg gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gct ggg		144
Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly		
35 40 45		
aca cct ccg ggc cgg gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct cca gct ggt aca		192
Thr Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr		
50 55 60		
cct cca ggc cgg gca tct cca ggc cgg gca tct cca gcc cag gca tct		240
Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser		
65 70 75 80		
cca gcc cgg gca tct ccg gct ctg gca tca ctt tcc agg tcc tca tcc		288
Pro Ala Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Leu Ala Ser Leu Ser Arg Ser Ser Ser		
85 90 95		
ggc agg tca tca tcc gcc agg tca gcc tcg gtg aca acc tcc cca acc		336
Gly Arg Ser Ser Ala Arg Ser Ala Ser Val Thr Thr Ser Pro Thr		
100 105 110		
aga gtg tac ctt gtt aga gca aca cca gtg ggg gct gta ccc atc cga		384
Arg Val Tyr Leu Val Arg Ala Thr Pro Val Gly Ala Val Pro Ile Arg		
115 120 125		

-8 of 20-

tca tct cct gcc agg tca gca cca gca acc agg gcc acc agg gag agc Ser Ser Pro Ala Arg Ser Ala Pro Ala Thr Arg Ala Thr Arg Glu Ser	432
130 135 140	
cca ggt acg agc ctg ccc aag ttc acc tgg cgg gag ggc cag aag cag Pro Gly Thr Ser Leu Pro Lys Phe Thr Trp Arg Glu Gly Gln Lys Gln	480
145 150 155 160	
cta ccg ctc atc ggg tgc gtg ctc ctc ctc att gcc ctg gtg gtt tcg Leu Pro Leu Ile Gly Cys Val Leu Leu Ile Ala Leu Val Val Ser	528
165 170 175	
ctc atc atc ctc ttc cag ttc tgg cag ggc cac aca ggg atc agg tac Leu Ile Ile Leu Phe Gln Phe Trp Gln Gly His Thr Gly Ile Arg Tyr	576
180 185 190	
aag gag cag agg gag agc tgt ccc aag cac gct gtt cgc tgt gac ggg Lys Glu Gln Arg Glu Ser Cys Pro Lys His Ala Val Arg Cys Asp Gly	624
195 200 205	
gtg gtg gac tgc aag ctg aag agt gac gag ctg ggc tgc gtg agg ttt Val Val Asp Cys Lys Leu Lys Ser Asp Glu Leu Gly Cys Val Arg Phe	672
210 215 220	
gac tgg gac aag tct ctg ctt aaa atc tac tct ggg tcc tcc cat cag Asp Trp Asp Lys Ser Leu Leu Lys Ile Tyr Ser Gly Ser Ser His Gln	720
225 230 235 240	
tgg ctt ccc atc tgt agc agc aac tgg aat gac tcc tac tca gag aag Trp Leu Pro Ile Cys Ser Ser Asn Trp Asn Asp Ser Tyr Ser Glu Lys	768
245 250 255	
acc tgc cag cag ctg ggt ttc gag agt gct cac cgg aca acc gag gtt Thr Cys Gln Gln Leu Gly Phe Glu Ser Ala His Arg Thr Thr Glu Val	816
260 265 270	
gcc cac agg gat ttt gcc aac agc ttc tca atc ttg aga tac aac tcc Ala His Arg Asp Phe Ala Asn Ser Phe Ser Ile Leu Arg Tyr Asn Ser	864
275 280 285	
acc atc cag gaa agc ctc cac agg tct gaa tgc cct tcc cag cgg tat Thr Ile Gln Glu Ser Leu His Arg Ser Glu Cys Pro Ser Gln Arg Tyr	912
290 295 300	
atc tcc ctc cag tgt tcc cac tgc gga ctg agg gcc atg acc ggg cgg Ile Ser Leu Gln Cys Ser His Cys Gly Leu Arg Ala Met Thr Gly Arg	960
305 310 315 320	
atc gtg gga ggg gcg ctg gcc tgc gat agc aag tgg cct tgg caa gtg Ile Val Gly Gly Ala Leu Ala Ser Asp Ser Lys Trp Pro Trp Gln Val	1008
325 330 335	
agt ctg cac ttc ggc acc acc cac atc tgt gga ggc acg ctc att gac Ser Leu His Phe Gly Thr Thr His Ile Cys Gly Gly Thr Leu Ile Asp	1056
340 345 350	
gcc cag tgg gtg ctc act gcc gcc cac tgc ttc gtg acc cgg gag Ala Gln Trp Val Leu Thr Ala Ala His Cys Phe Phe Val Thr Arg Glu	1104
355 360 365	
aag gtc ctg gag ggc tgg aag gtg tac gcg ggc acc agc aac ctg cac	1152

-9 of 20-

Lys Val Leu Glu Gly Trp Lys Val Tyr Ala Gly Thr Ser Asn Leu His 370 375 380		
cag ttg cct gag gca gcc tcc att gcc gag atc atc atc aac agc aat Gln Leu Pro Glu Ala Ala Ser Ile Ala Glu Ile Ile Ile Asn Ser Asn 385 390 395 400		1200
tac acc gat gag gag gac gac tat gac atc gcc ctc atg cgg ctg tcc Tyr Thr Asp Glu Asp Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ala Leu Met Arg Leu Ser 405 410 415		1248
aag ccc ctg acc ctg tcc gct cac atc cac cct gct tgc ctc ccc atg Lys Pro Leu Thr Leu Ser Ala His Ile His Pro Ala Cys Leu Pro Met 420 425 430		1296
cat gga cag acc ttt agc ctc aat gag acc tgc tgg atc aca ggc ttt His Gly Gln Thr Phe Ser Leu Asn Glu Thr Cys Trp Ile Thr Gly Phe 435 440 445		1344
ggc aag acc agg gag aca gat gac aag aca tcc ccc ttc ctc cgg gag Gly Lys Thr Arg Glu Thr Asp Asp Lys Thr Ser Pro Phe Leu Arg Glu 450 455 460		1392
gtg cag gtc aat ctc atc gac ttc aag aaa tgc aat gac tac ttg gtc Val Gln Val Asn Leu Ile Asp Phe Lys Lys Cys Asn Asp Tyr Leu Val 465 470 475 480		1440
tat gac agt tac ctt acc cca agg atg atg tgt gct ggg gac ctt cgt Tyr Asp Ser Tyr Leu Thr Pro Arg Met Met Cys Ala Gly Asp Leu Arg 485 490 495		1488
ggg ggc aga gac tcc tgc cag gga gac agc ggg ggg cct ctt gtc tgt Gly Gly Arg Asp Ser Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Cys 500 505 510		1536.
gag cag aac aac cgc tgg tac ctg gca ggt gtc acc agc tgg ggc aca Glu Gln Asn Asn Arg Trp Tyr Leu Ala Gly Val Thr Ser Trp Gly Thr 515 520 525		1584
ggc tgt ggc cag aga aac aaa cct ggt gtc tac acc aaa gtg aca gaa Gly Cys Gly Gln Arg Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Lys Val Thr Glu 530 535 540		1632
gtt ctt ccc tgg att tac agc aag atg gag aac aga gct cag cgg gtt Val Leu Pro Trp Ile Tyr Ser Lys Met Glu Asn Arg Ala Gln Arg Val 545 550 555 560		1680
gaa aaa gcg tgg acc tac agg cca ggc agg cag ttg ctg ggc aga tgt Glu Lys Ala Trp Thr Tyr Arg Pro Gly Arg Gln Leu Leu Gly Arg Cys 565 570 575		1728
tct ccc aga agt att ttt ttg tgt aag gtt gca atg gac ttt gaa aac Ser Pro Arg Ser Ile Phe Leu Cys Lys Val Ala Met Asp Phe Glu Asn 580 585 590		1776
gtt tca gtt tct gca gag gat ttt gtg ata gtt ttt gtt atc aag cat Val Ser Val Ser Ala Glu Asp Phe Val Ile Val Phe Val Ile Lys His 595 600 605		1824
tta tgc atg gga atc cgc tct tca tgg cct ttc cca gct ctg ttt gtt Leu Cys Met Gly Ile Arg Ser Ser Trp Pro Phe Pro Ala Leu Phe Val 610 615 620		1872

-10 of 20-

tta gtc ttt ttg att ttc ttt ttg ttg ttg ttg tct ttt tta aaa Leu Val Phe Leu Ile Phe Phe Leu Leu Leu Ser Phe Leu Lys 625                   630                   635                   640	1920
aac aca agt gac tcc att ttg act ctg aca act ttc aca gct gtc acc Asn Thr Ser Asp Ser Ile Leu Thr Leu Thr Phe Thr Ala Val Thr 645                   650                   655	1968
aga atg ctc cct gag aac tac cat tct ttc cct ttc cca ctt aaa ata Arg Met Leu Pro Glu Asn Tyr His Ser Phe Pro Phe Pro Leu Lys Ile 660                   665                   670	2016
ttt cat cag aac ctc act act atc ata aaa gag tat aaa gta ata aaa Phe His Gln Asn Leu Thr Thr Ile Ile Lys Glu Tyr Lys Val Ile Lys 675                   680                   685	2064
taa	2067
<210> 6 <211> 688 <212> PRT <213> Homo Sapien	
<220> <221> protease domain <222> (321)..(688)	
<400> 6 Met Glu Arg Asp Ser His Gly Asn Ala Ser Pro Ala Arg Thr Pro Ser 1                 5                   10                   15 Ala Gly Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr Pro Pro Gly 20                 25                   30 Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly 35                 40                   45 Thr Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr 50                 55                   60 Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Gln Ala Ser 65                 70                   75                   80 Pro Ala Arg Ala Ser Pro Ala Leu Ala Ser Leu Ser Arg Ser Ser Ser 85                 90                   95 Gly Arg Ser Ser Ala Arg Ser Ala Ser Val Thr Thr Ser Pro Thr 100                 105                  110 Arg Val Tyr Leu Val Arg Ala Thr Pro Val Gly Ala Val Pro Ile Arg 115                 120                  125 Ser Ser Pro Ala Arg Ser Ala Pro Ala Thr Arg Ala Thr Arg Glu Ser 130                 135                  140 Pro Gly Thr Ser Leu Pro Lys Phe Thr Trp Arg Glu Gly Gln Lys Gln 145                 150                  155                  160 Leu Pro Leu Ile Gly Cys Val Leu Leu Ile Ala Leu Val Val Ser 165                 170                  175 Leu Ile Ile Leu Phe Gln Phe Trp Gln Gly His Thr Gly Ile Arg Tyr 180                 185                  190 Lys Glu Gln Arg Glu Ser Cys Pro Lys His Ala Val Arg Cys Asp Gly 195                 200                  205 Val Val Asp Cys Lys Leu Lys Ser Asp Glu Leu Gly Cys Val Arg Phe 210                 215                  220 Asp Trp Asp Lys Ser Leu Leu Lys Ile Tyr Ser Gly Ser Ser His Gln 225                 230                  235                  240 Trp Leu Pro Ile Cys Ser Ser Asn Trp Asn Asp Ser Tyr Ser Glu Lys 245                 250                  255 Thr Cys Gln Gln Leu Gly Phe Glu Ser Ala His Arg Thr Glu Val	

-11 of 20-

Ala His Arg Asp Phe Ala Asn Ser	260	Phe Ser Ile Leu Arg Tyr Asn Ser	265	270
275	280	285		
Thr Ile Gln Glu Ser Leu His Arg Ser Glu Cys Pro Ser Gln Arg Tyr				
290	295	300		
Ile Ser Leu Gln Cys Ser His Cys Gly Leu Arg Ala Met Thr Gly Arg				
305	310	315	320	
Ile Val Gly Gly Ala Leu Ala Ser Asp Ser Lys Trp Pro Trp Gln Val				
325	330	335		
Ser Leu His Phe Gly Thr Thr His Ile Cys Gly Gly Thr Leu Ile Asp				
340	345	350		
Ala Gln Trp Val Leu Thr Ala Ala His Cys Phe Phe Val Thr Arg Glu				
355	360	365		
Lys Val Leu Glu Gly Trp Lys Val Tyr Ala Gly Thr Ser Asn Leu His				
370	375	380		
Gln Leu Pro Glu Ala Ala Ser Ile Ala Glu Ile Ile Asn Ser Asn				
385	390	395	400	
Tyr Thr Asp Glu Glu Asp Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ala Leu Met Arg Leu Ser				
405	410	415		
Lys Pro Leu Thr Leu Ser Ala His Ile His Pro Ala Cys Leu Pro Met				
420	425	430		
His Gly Gln Thr Phe Ser Leu Asn Glu Thr Cys Trp Ile Thr Gly Phe				
435	440	445		
Gly Lys Thr Arg Glu Thr Asp Asp Lys Thr Ser Pro Phe Leu Arg Glu				
450	455	460		
Val Gln Val Asn Leu Ile Asp Phe Lys Lys Cys Asn Asp Tyr Leu Val				
465	470	475	480	
Tyr Asp Ser Tyr Leu Thr Pro Arg Met Met Cys Ala Gly Asp Leu Arg				
485	490	495		
Gly Gly Arg Asp Ser Cys Gln Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Cys				
500	505	510		
Glu Gln Asn Asn Arg Trp Tyr Leu Ala Gly Val Thr Ser Trp Gly Thr				
515	520	525		
Gly Cys Gly Gln Arg Asn Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Lys Val Thr Glu				
530	535	540		
Val Leu Pro Trp Ile Tyr Ser Lys Met Glu Asn Arg Ala Gln Arg Val				
545	550	555	560	
Glu Lys Ala Trp Thr Tyr Arg Pro Gly Arg Gln Leu Leu Gly Arg Cys				
565	570	575		
Ser Pro Arg Ser Ile Phe Leu Cys Lys Val Ala Met Asp Phe Glu Asn				
580	585	590		
Val Ser Val Ser Ala Glu Asp Phe Val Ile Val Phe Val Ile Lys His				
595	600	605		
Leu Cys Met Gly Ile Arg Ser Ser Trp Pro Phe Pro Ala Leu Phe Val				
610	615	620		
Leu Val Phe Leu Ile Phe Leu Leu Leu Leu Ser Phe Leu Lys				
625	630	635	640	
Asn Thr Ser Asp Ser Ile Leu Thr Leu Thr Phe Thr Ala Val Thr				
645	650	655		
Arg Met Leu Pro Glu Asn Tyr His Ser Phe Pro Phe Pro Leu Lys Ile				
660	665	670		
Phe His Gln Asn Leu Thr Thr Ile Ile Lys Glu Tyr Lys Val Ile Lys				
675	680	685		

&lt;210&gt; 7

&lt;211&gt; 25

&lt;212&gt; DNA

&lt;213&gt; Artificial Sequence

&lt;220&gt;

<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:  
Oligonucleotide primer

-12 of 20-

<400> 7  
cctgccagat ggactgcttc ctttg 25

<210> 8  
<211> 27  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Anti-sense primer

<400> 8  
ggcatgcata tgggtttccct tctaagg 27  
<210> 9  
<211> 25  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Oligonucleotide primer  
<220>  
<223> R= A,G; V= G,A,C; W=A,T; S=G,C; Y= C,T; H= A,T,C; I= Inosine

<400> 9  
tggrrtivtiw sigcircica ytg 23

<210> 10  
<211> 31  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Description of Artificial Sequence:  
Oligonucleotide primer

<220>  
<223> R= A,G; V= G,A,C; W=A,T; S=G,C; Y= C,T; H= A,T,C; I= Inosine

<400> 10  
ggccccccis wrtciccyti rcaighrte 29

<210> 11  
<211> 29  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>  
<223> Oligonucleotide Primer

<400> 11  
ggaggcaagc aggggtggatg tgagcggac 29

<210> 12  
<211> 26  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence

-13 of 20-

<220>  
<223> Oligonucleotide Primer  
  
<400> 12  
cggatcgtag gaggggcgct ggcctc 26  
  
<210> 13  
<211> 27  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<223> Oligonucleotide Primer  
  
<400> 13  
caagtggatc tgcacttcgg caccacc 27  
  
<210> 14  
<211> 13  
<212> PRT  
<213> Homo Sapien  
  
<400> 14  
Aia Ser Pro Ala Gly Thr Pro Pro Gly Arg Ala Ser Pro  
1 5 10  
  
<210> 15  
<211> 27  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<223> Oligonucleotide Primer  
  
<400> 15  
cggatcgtag gaggggcgct ggcctcg 27  
  
<210> 16  
<211> 36  
<212> DNA  
<213> Artificial Sequence  
  
<220>  
<223> Oligonucleotide Primer  
  
<400> 16  
cagcaggcca gctgggttagg attttatgaa tcgcac 36  
  
<210> 17  
<211> 9  
<212> DNA  
<213> Homo sapien  
  
<220>  
<223> Start of the endotheliase 2 protease domain  
  
<220>  
<223> R= A,G; V= G,A,C; S=G,C; I= Inosine

-14 of 20-

<400> 10		
rvvgalas		9
<210> 18		
<211> 22		
<212> DNA		
<213> Artificial Sequence		
<220>		
<223> Anti-sense primer		
<400> 18		
tccaggaaag cctccacagg tc		22
<210> 19		
<211> 29		
<212> DNA		
<213> Artificial Sequence		
<220>		
<223> Oligonucleotide primer		
<400> 19		
ggaggcaagc agggtggatg tgagcggac		29
<210> 20		
<211> 25		
<212> DNA		
<213> Artificial Sequence		
<220>		
<223> Oligonucleotide Primer		
<400> 20		
ttcctccggg aggtgcaggt caatc		25
<210> 21		
<211> 9276		
<212> DNA		
<213> Pichia pastoris		
<220>		
<223> pPic9K vector		
<400> 21		
agatctaaca tccaaagacg aaagggtgaa tgaaacctt ttgccatccg acatccacag		60
gtccattctc acacataagt gccaaacgca acaggagggg atacactagc agcagaccgt		120
tgcaaacgca ggacctccac tccttctc ctcaacaccc acttttgcga tcgaaaaacc		180
agcccagta ttgggttga ttggagctcg ctcatcCAA ttcccttctat taggtacta		240
acaccatgac ttatagcc tttctatcct ggccccctcg gcgagggtca tgTTTgttta		300
tttccgaatg caacaagctc cgattacac ccgaacatca ctccagatga gggctttctg		360
agtgtggggt caaatagttt catgttcccc aaatggccca aaactgacag ttAAACGCT		420
gtcttggAAC ctaatatgac aaaAGCgtGA ttcattccaa gatgaactaa gtttgggtcg		480
ttgaaatgtc aacggccagt ttgtcaaaaa gaaacttcca aaagtccca taccgtttgt		540
cttgggttgt attgattgac gaatgctcaa aaataatctc attaatgttt agcgcagtct		600
ctctatcgt tctgaacccc ggtgcacctg tgccgaaacg caaatggga aacacccgct		660
ttttggatga ttatgcattt tctccacatt gtatgcttcc aagattctgg tggaaatact		720
gctgatagcc taacgttcat gatcaaaaatt taactgttct aaccctact tgacagcaat		780
atataaaacag aaggaagctg ccctgtctta aacctttttt ttatcatca ttattagctt		840

-15 of 20-

actttataaa ttgcgactgg ttccaaattga caagctttt attttaacga cttttaacga  
caaccttgaga agataaaaaaaa acaactaatt attcgaagga tccaaacgcg gagatttcct  
tcaattttt ctgcgactttt attcgcgcg tcctccggat tagtgcgtcc agtcaacact  
acaacagaag atgaaacgcg acaaattccg gctgaagctg tcatcggtt ctcagattn  
gaaggggatt tcgatgttgc tggtttgcctt tttccaaaca gcacaaaataa cgggttatg  
tttataaata ctactattgc cagcattgtc gctaaagaag aaggggatc tctcgagaaa  
agagaggctg aagcttacgt aqaatccctt aggccggccg cgaattaatt cgccttagac  
atgactttt ctcaatgttca gttggggact tacgagaaga ccggttgc tagatctaa  
tcaagaggat gtcaaatgc catgttgcgtt agagatgcg gcttcattt tgatattt  
ttatgtttaa cctatataagt ataggatttt tttgttcatt ttgtttttc tcgtacgagc  
ttgtccctga tcagccatc tcgcagctga tgaatatctt gtggtagggg tttgggaaa  
tcatcgagt ttgtatgttt tcttgggtattt cccactctt cttcagatg cagaagattn  
agtgaagaatg tgcgttgc aqgatctatc ataagctta atgcgttgc tagatctaa  
taaattgtcta acgcaatgcg gacccgtgtc tgaatctaa caatgcgtc  
tcggccatc caccctggat gctgttaggg taggctgtt tatggccgtt  
tcttgcggga tatacgatccat tccgacagc tgcgcgtca ctatggctg  
tataatgcgtt gatcaattt ctatgcgcac ccgttccgg actgcgttcc  
gcccgcggcc agtctgtc gtttcgtac ttggagccac taticgtact  
cgacccacc cgtctgtgg atctatgcga tctaaatgtt agttaaaatc  
taaataatgc ccaatgttcc catacgaacc ttaacagcat tgccgtgac  
tcaacagcag ccagatccat cactgttgc ccaatatgtt tcaatgttcc  
tcttgtgaag ttagtgaactt ctggaaagggt gcaatgtttaa ctccgcgtt  
tatccgtacg ttggccaaagt gtgggttgc cccggaggat aatctccaca  
gagtaggcac caaacaaac acatccagcg tggtgtactt gatcaacata  
ttctcgatggt gcaggatcaa gtgttgcggg gctgtactgt tgacatttc  
tcgttaggttgc caaccgtatgg gttgttagag tgcgtcaatc acttgcgtac  
cttggcaact gcacagcttgc ttgttgcggaa gcatcttcaa ttctggcaag  
gtcatatcg cagccaaacag aatcacctgg gaatcaatc catgttgc  
aggcttgagg caacaaatc tggatcagcg tattatcg caataactcg  
ggccccagcg gcatgtcaat actacacagg gctgtatgtt catttgaac  
gcacgatggat cgaatgttgc ttctggacca aatatttttgc  
gttccgtaaatccatcgac tactgttgc ggcgttcttgc  
ccaaccttgc tggcaactgt gatgactttt gggtaaagggt  
gatgcaaaaaa caattttttt gcaaccaggca  
gttggaaaggca gaatttgcggt tccaccaggaa  
gcggaaacggag acggactac accaggggca  
gcttcatggat atttcgtac gttatctata  
ggcaatttgc taagtttcc tggggaaaggaa  
ccatccaaact tggcaatgg tttctaaaagg  
aaatctgggt tgactaattt cataatctgt  
tcttcaattt ctgttgcgggaa ggcttgcggaa  
tcagaaggaa cttctttagg ttggattct  
ttggcatctc ctttccttctt agtgacccctt  
tgcgtccaaacg tcacacgttgc ctggacat  
cattttccagg ctatatctt ctggatatt  
attttagcgt tcaacaaaac ttctgtgtca  
gcattgtctc tagatccca caagggtgtt  
aaacaggaaatg tgcttgcggaa tgacagaaaa  
aaggcgttcc catcacaatc caattcgata  
gcaccccttaccc accacaaacc gtgacgacga  
gcctccggaa tagactttt ggacgactac  
gcacccaaatg tagtgaatag accatcgggg  
tcaatcgacac ggaactttt gacatcttca  
gcaccaataa tggggattat accagaagca  
gttctcgaaaa aagcttacaaac agtttacta  
agtggagaag aaaaaggcc acggatata  
accagggttc tatagataac cttctgtgtt  
aatcttaggt ccaaaatc cttatgtata  
atcgtctc cttatgttgc ctgtgtac  
tcgtcgatggt gatgttgcgggaaatc  
gccttcccttca ccaacttgc ggaatttac  
aaggggaaatg tcataacttgc agtccggac

-16 of 20-

tatTTTtatt atcagtgagt cagtcatca gggatccctt acggccggacg catcggtggcc	4620
gaccTgcagg gggggggggg gcgctgagg ctgcctcgta aagaaggtgt tgctgactca	4680
taccaggcct gaatcgcccc atcatccagc cagaaagtga gggagccacg gttgatgaga	4740
gctttgttgt aggtggacca ttgggtgatt ttgaactttt gcttgcac ggaacccgtct	4800
gcgttgcgg gaagatgcgt gatctgatcc ttcaacttag caaaagttcg atttattcaa	4860
caaagccgc gtcggcgtaa tcgagcgtaa tgctctgcca gtgttacaac caattaacca	4920
attctgatta aaaaactca tcgagcata aatggaaactg caatttatttc atatcaggat	4980
tatcaatacc atattttga aaaagccgtt tctgtaatga aggagaaaaac tcaccggaggc	5040
agttccatag gatggcaaga tcctggatc ggtctgcgt tccgactcg ccaacatcaa	5100
tacaacctat taatTTTccc tcgtcaaaaa taagggttac aagtggagaa tcaccatgag	5160
tgacgactga atccggtag aatggaaaaa gcttatgat ttcttccgg acttggtaaa	5220
caggccagcc attacgctcg tcatcaaaa cactcgatc aacccaaacccg ttatttatttc	5280
gtgattgcgc ctgagcggaga cgaaatacgc gatcgctttt aaaaggacaa ttacaaacag	5340
gaatcgaatg caacccggc aggaaacactg ccagcgcata aacaaatattt tcacccgtaa	5400
caggatattt tcctaatacc tggatgtctg ttttcccccgtt gatcgactg gtgagtaacc	5460
atgcatcatc aggagtagccg ataaaatgtt tgatggctgg aagaggcata aattccgtca	5520
gccaggtagt tctgaccatc tcatctgtaa catatttgc aacgctaccc ttgcatgtt	5580
tcagaacaaa ctctggcgc tggggcttc catacaatcg atagattgtc gcacccgtt	5640
gccccgacatt atcgcggacc catttatacc cataaaaaatc agcatccatg ttggattta	5700
atcgcggcct cgagcaagac gtttcccggtt gaatatggct cataacacccc cttgtattac	5760
tgtttatgtt akgcagacatg ttatgttgcg atgatgatatttttatct tggcaatgt	5820
aacatcagag attttggagc acaacgtggc ttccccccccc cccctcgacg gtcggcatca	5880
ccggccggcc acggcggtt gtcggccctt atatcgccgatcataccatgat ggggaaagatc	5940
gggctcgcca cttccggctc atgagcgctt gttccgggtt gggatgggtt gcaggccccgg	6000
tggccggggg actgttgggc ggcattctcc tgcattgcacc attccttgcg gcggccgggtgc	6060
tcaacccggcct caacactacta ctgggctgtt tccataatgc ggatcgcat aaggggagac	6120
gtcgagtagt atgatggtaga agtggggaa tggtgatcatc cgcatttcttcc agtgtcttga	6180
ggtctccat cagattatgc ccaactaaag caacccggagg aggagatttc atggtaaatt	6240
tctctgactt ttggatcatca gtagactcgaa actgtggagac tatctcggtt atgacagcag	6300
aaatgtcctt ctggagaca gtaaaatggaa tcccaacat aaagaatcc ttgttattatcg	6360
gaacaaactt ctgttttgcg accttttccgg tgccttgcac taaaatgtt agatggata	6420
tgtcgggttag gaatggagcg ggcaaatgct taccttctgg accttcaaga ggtatgttgg	6480
ttttgtatg actgtatgc acctgcgttca caacgttgcattttgttca aaccatccg	6540
aatccagagg aatcaaaatgtt gttgttcatca tattgtatca agccatgtcg gtccttggaaac	6600
tgacaatagt gtgctcggtt ttggatgtca tctttgtat aataaaatcta gtctttgatc	6660
taaataatct tgacgagcca aggcataaaa tacccaaatac taaaatctt taaaacatgtt	6720
aaaaggacaa gatgttgcg ctgttattaaa ccccaatca gctcgtagtc tgatcctcat	6780
caacttggagg ggcactatct tgggttagag aaatggcggtt agatcgatca tggagaaaaaa	6840
ggtacgctga ttttaaacgtt qaaatttttac tcaagatctc tgctcgccg gtttccgggtga	6900
tgacgggtgaa aacctctgac acatgcagct cccggagacg gtcacagctt gtcgttgc	6960
ggatggccggg agcagacaga cccgtcaggcg cgcgtcaggcg ggtgttggcg ggtgtccgggg	7020
cgcagccatc accgcgttac gtagcgatag cggagtgtt actgttgcctaa ctatgcggca	7080
tcagagcaga ttgtacttagt agtgcacccat atgcgttgcgaaataacccgca cagatcgatc	7140
aggagaaaaat accgcacatcg ggcgttccg gtttccctcg tcactgtactc gtcgtcgctcg	7200
gtcggttgcg tgcggcgac ggtatcgact cacttcaagg cggtaatacg gtatccaca	7260
gaatcagggg ataacgcagg aaaaacatcg tgagcaaaatggccacaaa ggcacggaaac	7320
cgtaaaaagg cgcgttgcg ggcgttttc cataggctcc gccccccctga cgacatcac	7380
aaaaatcgac gctcaatgtt gagggtggcga aacccgacag gactataaag ataccaggcg	7440
tttccccctt gaaatgcctt ctgtcgctt cctgttccgaa ccctggccgt taccggatac	7500
ctgtccgcct ttctccctt gggaaaggctt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	7560
ctcgttccgg tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	7620
cccgaccgct gcgccttatac cgtaactat cgttgcgtt gtcacccgtt aagacacccg	7680
ttatcgccac tggcagcgc cacttgcgttac aggtttatgc gaggatggta tgtagggcggt	7740
gctacagat tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	7800
atctgcgttac tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	7860
aaacaaacca cgcgttccgg tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	7920
aaaaaaaggat ctcaagaaga tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	7980
aaaaactcactac gttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	8040
ctttttttttt aaaaatggat tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	8100
gacagttacc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	8160
tccatagtttgc tttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	8220
ggcccccgtt gttttttttt gggatccatc aatgttgcacg ctgttaggtat	8280

-17 of 20-

```

ataaacccgc cagccggaaag ggcccggcgc agaagtggtc ctgcactt atccgcctcc
atccagttca ttaattgttg ccgggaagct agagtaagta gttcgccagt taatagttt
cgcaacccgtt ttgcattgc tgccaggcata gtgggtgcac gctcgctgtt tggatggc
tcattcatcg ccgggttcca acgatcaagg cgatccat gatccccat gttgtgcaaa
aaagcggtt a gtccttcgg tcctccgatc gttgtcaga gtaatggc cgcgtgtt
tcattcatgg ttatggcagc actgcataat tctcttactg tcatgccatc cgtaagatgc
tttctgtt gtcggtaga ctcacccaag tcattctgat aatagtgtat gcggcgaccg
agttgtctt gccggcgc aacacggat aataccgcgc cacatagcag aactttaaa
gtgtcatca ttggaaaaacg ttcttcgggg cggaaactt caaggatct accgctgtt
agatccagg t cgtgttaacc cactcgatc cccaaactgtat cttcagcatc tttactttc
accaggcgtt ctgggtgagc aaaaacagga aggcaaaatg ccgcaaaaaa gggataagg
gcgacacgga aatgttgaat actcatactc ttccctttt aatattattt aagcatttat
cagggttatt gtctcatgat cgatcata tttgaatgtt ttttagaaaaaa taacaaata
ggggttccgc gcacattcc cggaaaatgtt ccacctgacg tctaagaaaac cattattatc
atgacattaa cctttaaaaa taggcgtatc acgaggccct ttcgcttca agaattaatt
ctcatgtttt acagtttac atcgataagc tgactcatgt tggattgtt aaatagacgc
agatcgggaa cactgaaaaa taacagttat tattcg

<210> 22
<211> 1471
<212> DNA
<213> Homo sapien

<220>
<221> protease domain
<222> (626)..(1324)

<221> CDS
<222> (56)...(1324)

<221> modified_base
<222> 127
<223> n = C or G

<221> modified_base
<222> 164
<223> n = C or G

<221> modified_base
<222> 1233
<223> n = C or G

<400> 1
cgactttggat gtagacctcg accttcacag gactttcat tgctgggtgg caatg atg      58
Met
1

cat cgg cca gat gtg gtg agg gct agg aaa aga gtt tgt tgg gaa ccc
Tyr Arg Pro Asp Val Val Arg Ala Arg Lys Arg Val Cys Trp Glu Pro      106
5          10           15

gg gtt atc ggc ctc gtc atn ttc ata tcc ctg att gtc ctg gca gtg
Trp Val Ile Gly Leu Val Xaa Phe Ile Ser Leu Ile Val Leu Ala Val      154
20         25           30

gc att gga ntc act gtt cat tat gtg aga tat aat caa aag aag acc
Tys Ile Gly Xaa Thr Val His Tyr Val Arg Tyr Asn Gln Lys Lys Thr      202
35         40           45

```

-18 of 20-

tac aat tac tat agc aca ttg tca ttt aca act gac aaa cta tat gct Tyr Asn Tyr Tyr Ser Thr Leu Ser Phe Thr Thr Asp Lys Leu Tyr Ala 50 55 60 65	250
gag ttt ggc aga gag gct tct aac aat ttt aca gaa atg agc cag aga Glu Phe Gly Arg Glu Ala Ser Asn Asn Phe Thr Glu Met Ser Gln Arg 70 75 80	298
ctt gaa tca atg gtg aaa aat gca ttt tat aaa tct cca tta agg gaa Leu Glu Ser Met Val Lys Asn Ala Phe Tyr Lys Ser Pro Leu Arg Glu 85 90 95	346
gaa ttt gtc aag tct cag gtt atc aag ttc agt caa cag aag cat gga Glu Phe Val Lys Ser Gln Val Ile Lys Phe Ser Gln Gln Lys His Gly 100 105 110	394
gtg ttg gct cat atg ctg ttg att tgt aga ttt cac tct act gag gat Val Leu Ala His Met Leu Leu Ile Cys Arg Phe His Ser Thr Glu Asp 115 120 125	442
cct gaa act gta gat aaa att gtt caa ctt gtt tta cat gaa aag ctg Pro Glu Thr Val Asp Lys Ile Val Gln Leu Val Leu His Glu Lys Leu 130 135 140 145	490
caa gat gct gta gga ccc cct aaa gta gat cct cac tca gtt aaa att Gln Asp Ala Val Gly Pro Pro Lys Val Asp Pro His Ser Val Lys Ile 150 155 160	538
aaa aaa atc aac aag aca gaa aca gac agc tat cta aac cat tgc tgc Lys Lys Ile Asn Lys Thr Glu Thr Asp Ser Tyr Leu Asn His Cys Cys 165 170 175	586
gga aca cga aga agt aaa act cta ggt cag agt ctc agg atc gtt ggt Gly Thr Arg Arg Ser Lys Thr Leu Gly Gln Ser Leu Arg Ile Val Gly 180 185 190	634
ggg aca gaa gta gaa gag ggt gaa tgg ccc tgg cag gct agc ctg cag Gly Thr Glu Val Glu Glu Gly Glu Trp Pro Trp Gln Ala Ser Leu Gln 195 200 205	682
tgg gat ggg agt cat cgc tgt gga gca acc tta att aat gcc aca tgg Trp Asp Gly Ser His Arg Cys Gly Ala Thr Leu Ile Asn Ala Thr Trp 210 215 220 225	730
ctt gtg agt gct cac tgt ttt aca aca tat aag aac cct gcc aga Leu Val Ser Ala Ala His Cys Phe Thr Thr Tyr Lys Asn Pro Ala Arg 230 235 240	778
tgg act gct tcc ttt gga gta aca ata aaa cct tcg aaa atg aaa cgg Trp Thr Ala Ser Phe Gly Val Thr Ile Lys Pro Ser Lys Met Lys Arg 245 250 255	826
ggg ctc cgg aga ata att gtc cat gaa aaa tac aaa cac cca tca cat Gly Leu Arg Arg Ile Ile Val His Glu Lys Tyr Lys His Pro Ser His 260 265 270	874
gac tat gat att tct ctt gca gag ctt tct agc cct gtt ccc tac aca Asp Tyr Asp Ile Ser Leu Ala Glu Leu Ser Ser Pro Val Pro Tyr Thr 275 280 285	922
aat gca gta cat aga gtt tgt ctc cct gat gca tcc tat gag ttt caa Asn Ala Val His Arg Val Cys Leu Pro Asp Ala Ser Tyr Glu Phe Gln	970

**-19 of 20-**

290	295	300	305	
cca ggt gat gtg atg ttt gtg aca gga ttt gga gca ctg aaa aat gat Pro Gly Asp Val Met Phe Val Thr Gly Phe Gly Ala Leu Lys Asn Asp 310 315 320				1018
ggt tac agt caa aat cat ctt cga caa gca cag gtg act ctc ata gac Gly Tyr Ser Gln Asn His Leu Arg Gln Ala Gln Val Thr Leu Ile Asp 325 330 335				1066
gct aca act tgc aat gaa cct caa gct tac aat gac gcc ata act cct Ala Thr Thr Cys Asn Glu Pro Gln Ala Tyr Asn Asp Ala Ile Thr Pro 340 345 350				1114
aga atg tta tgt gct ggc tcc tta gaa gga aaa aca gat gca tgc cag Arg Met Leu Cys Ala Gly Ser Leu Glu Gly Lys Thr Asp Ala Cys Gln 355 360 365				1162
ggg gac tct gga gga cca ctg gtt agt tca gat gct aga gat atc tgg Gly Asp Ser Gly Gly Pro Leu Val Ser Ser Asp Ala Arg Asp Ile Trp 370 375 380 385				1210
tac ctt gct gga ata gtg agc tng gga gat gaa tgt gcg aaa ccc aac Tyr Leu Ala Gly Ile Val Ser Xaa Gly Asp Glu Cys Ala Lys Pro Asn 390 395 400				1258
aag cct ggt gtt tat act aga gtt acg gcc ttg cg gac tgg att act Lys Pro Gly Val Tyr Thr Arg Val Thr Ala Leu Arg Asp Trp Ile Thr 405 410 415				1306
tca aaa act ggt atc taa gagagaaaaag cctcatggaa cagataacat Ser Lys Thr Gly Ile *				1354
tttttttgt tttttgggtg tggaggccat ttttagagat acagaattgg agaagacttg caaaacagct agatttgact gatctcaata aactgttgc ttgatgcaaa aaaaaaaa				1414 1471
<210> 23				
<211> 42				
<212> DNA				
<213> Artificial Sequence				
<220>				
<223> Endotheliase 1 forward primer				
<400> 23				
tctctcgaga aaagaatcgt tggggaca gaagttagaag ag				
42				
<210> 24				
<211> 39				
<212> DNA				
<213> Artificial Sequence				
<220>				
<223> Endotheliase 1 reverse primer				
<400> 24				
atccgcggcc gcttagatac cagttttga agtaatcca				
39				
<210> 25				
<211> 39				
<212> DNA				

-20 of 20-

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Endotheliase 2 forward primer

<400> 25

tctctcgaga aaagaatcgt gggaggggcg ctggcctcg

39

<210> 26

<211> 40

<212> DNA

<213> Artificial Sequence

<220>

<223> Endotheliase 2 reverse primer

<400> 26

atagcggccg ctggtagga ttttatgaat cgcacccgc

40

(12) INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

(19) World Intellectual Property Organization  
International Bureau



(43) International Publication Date  
25 May 2001 (25.05.2001)

PCT

(10) International Publication Number  
**WO 01/36604 A3**

(51) International Patent Classification<sup>5</sup>: C12N 9/64,  
15/57, 1/21, 1/19, 5/10, C07K 16/40, C12Q 1/37, A61K  
38/48

ONG, Edgar, O. [CA/US]; 8328 Regents Road #3C, San  
Diego, CA 92122 (US).

(21) International Application Number: PCT/US00/31803

(74) Agents: SEIDMAN, Stephanie, L. et al.; Heller Ehrman  
White & McAuliffe LLP, 4250 Executive Square, Suite  
700, La Jolla, CA 92037 (US).

(22) International Filing Date:  
17 November 2000 (17.11.2000)

(81) Designated States (national): AE, AG, AM, AT, AU, AZ,  
BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, BZ, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE,  
DK, DM, DZ, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU,  
ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS,  
LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, MZ, NO,  
NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR,  
TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW.

(25) Filing Language: English

(84) Designated States (regional): ARIPO patent (GH, GM,  
KE, LS, MW, MZ, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian  
patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European  
patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE,  
IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE, TR), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF,  
CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG).

(26) Publication Language: English

Published:

— with international search report

(30) Priority Data:

60/166,391 18 November 1999 (18.11.1999) US  
60/234,840 22 September 2000 (22.09.2000) US

(88) Date of publication of the international search report:  
1 November 2001

(63) Related by continuation (CON) or continuation-in-part  
(CIP) to earlier applications:

US 60/166,391 (CIP)  
Filed on 18 November 1999 (18.11.1999)  
US 60/234,840 (CIP)  
Filed on 22 September 2000 (22.09.2000)

For two-letter codes and other abbreviations, refer to the "Guidance Notes on Codes and Abbreviations" appearing at the beginning of each regular issue of the PCT Gazette.

(71) Applicant (for all designated States except US): CORVAS  
INTERNATIONAL, INC. [US/US]; 3030 Science Park  
Road, San Diego, CA 92121 (US).

(72) Inventors; and

(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only): MADISON, Edwin,  
L. [US/US]; 501 Stratford Court, Del Mar, CA 92014 (US).

WO 01/36604 A3

(54) Title: NUCLEIC ACIDS ENCODING ENDOTHELIASES, ENDOTHELIASES AND USES THEREOF

(57) Abstract: Provided herein endotheliaases and portions, particularly, the protease domains, and nucleic acids that encode the endotheliaases. The endotheliaases are transmembrane proteases expressed in endothelial cells. The nucleic acids and encoded proteins and protease domain portions thereof are used in a variety of prognostic, diagnostic, therapeutic and screening methods, including methods for screening for compounds that modulate angiogenesis.

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Internatinal Application No  
PCT/US 00/31803

A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER					
IPC 7	C12N9/64	C12N15/57	C12N1/21	C12N1/19	C12N5/10
	C07K16/40	C12Q1/37	A61K38/48		

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

**B. FIELDS SEARCHED**

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)  
IPC 7 C12N

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)  
EPO-Internal, BIOSIS, EMBL

**C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT**

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DATABASE EMBL 'Online! Accession number AF064819, 28 October 1999 (1999-10-28) LANG JC, SCHULLER DE: "Homo sapiens serine protease DESC1 (DESC1) mRNA" XP002166624 abstract ---	1-4, 7-31, 35-46
X	DATABASE EMBL 'Online! Accession number R78581, 10 June 1995 (1995-06-10) HILLIER L ET AL.: "y173c10.r1 Soares placenta Nb2HP Homo sapiens cDNA clone" XP002166677 abstract --- -/--	9-20

Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

Patent family members are listed in annex.

\* Special categories of cited documents :

- \*A\* document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance
- \*E\* earlier document but published on or after the international filing date
- \*L\* document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)
- \*O\* document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means
- \*P\* document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

\*T\* later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

\*X\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

\*Y\* document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

\*&\* document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

10 May 2001

Date of mailing of the international search report

28.05.01

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl  
Fax. (+31-70) 340-3016

Authorized officer

Bi Lang, J

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Intern. Application No  
PCT/US 00/31803

C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT		
Category	Citation or document, with indication where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	RAO C N ET AL: "Partial characterization of matrix-associated serine protease inhibitors from human skin cells." JOURNAL OF INVESTIGATIVE DERMATOLOGY, vol. 104, no. 3, 1995, pages 379-383, XP000999611 ISSN: 0022-202X ---	
P, X	WO 00 50061 A (UNIV OHIO STATE RES FOUND ; LANG JAS C (US)) 31 August 2000 (2000-08-31) cited in the application the whole document ---	1-4, 7-31, 35-46
P, X	DATABASE EMBL 'Online' Accession number Y99414, 8 August 2000 (2000-08-08) "Human PRO1461" XP002166625 abstract & WO 00 12708 A (GENENTECH) 9 March 2000 (2000-03-09)  SEQ ID 268 and 269 -----	1-4, 7-31, 35-46
P, X		1-4, 7-31, 35-46

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International application No.  
PCT/US 00/31803

### Box I Observations where certain claims were found unsearchable (Continuation of item 1 of first sheet)

This International Search Report has not been established in respect of certain claims under Article 17(2)(a) for the following reasons:

1.  Claims Nos.: because they relate to subject matter not required to be searched by this Authority, namely:
  
2.  Claims Nos.: 32-34, 49-52 because they relate to parts of the International Application that do not comply with the prescribed requirements to such an extent that no meaningful international Search can be carried out, specifically:  
see FURTHER INFORMATION sheet PCT/ISA/210
  
3.  Claims Nos.: because they are dependent claims and are not drafted in accordance with the second and third sentences of Rule 6.4(a).

### Box II Observations where unity of invention is lacking (Continuation of item 2 of first sheet)

This International Searching Authority found multiple inventions in this international application, as follows:

see additional sheet

1.  As all required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers all searchable claims.
  
2.  As all searchable claims could be searched without effort justifying an additional fee, this Authority did not invite payment of any additional fee.
  
3.  As only some of the required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant, this International Search Report covers only those claims for which fees were paid, specifically claims Nos.:
  
  
4.  No required additional search fees were timely paid by the applicant. Consequently, this International Search Report is restricted to the invention first mentioned in the claims; it is covered by claims Nos.:

#### Remark on Protest

- The additional search fees were accompanied by the applicant's protest.  
 No protest accompanied the payment of additional search fees

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

Continuation of Box I.2

Claims Nos.: 32-34, 49-52

Claims 32-34 and 49-52 relate to an extremely large number of possible compounds and their use. Support within the meaning of Article 6 PCT and/or disclosure within the meaning of Article 5 PCT is to be found, however, for only a very small proportion of the compounds claimed. In the present case, the claims so lack support, and the application so lacks disclosure, that a meaningful search over the whole of the claimed scope is impossible. Consequently, the search has been carried out for those parts of the claims which appear to be supported and disclosed, namely those parts relating to the endotheliase inhibitors which are antibodies or antisense nucleic acids.

The applicant's attention is drawn to the fact that claims, or parts of claims, relating to inventions in respect of which no international search report has been established need not be the subject of an international preliminary examination (Rule 66.1(e) PCT). The applicant is advised that the EPO policy when acting as an International Preliminary Examining Authority is normally not to carry out a preliminary examination on matter which has not been searched. This is the case irrespective of whether or not the claims are amended following receipt of the search report or during any Chapter II procedure.

FURTHER INFORMATION CONTINUED FROM PCT/ISA/ 210

This International Searching Authority found multiple (groups of) inventions in this international application, as follows:

1. Claims: 1-4, 7-60 (all partially)

Endotheliase 1, nucleic acids encoding endotheliase 1, and uses of endotheliase 1

2. Claims: 5, 6 (completely), 1-4, 7-60 (partially)

As 1 but endotheliase 2

**INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT**

Information on patent family members

Interr.	nal Application No
PCT/US	00/31803

Patent document cited in search report		Publication date		Patent family member(s)		Publication date
WO 0050061	A	31-08-2000	AU	1068900	A	14-09-2000
WO 0012708	A	09-03-2000	AU	5590899	A	21-03-2000
			AU	6041399	A	10-04-2000
			WO	0017353	A	30-03-2000